



**29 October 2024**

**To: Members of the Hong Kong Institute of CPAs  
All other interested parties**

**INVITATION TO COMMENT ON EXPOSURE DRAFT (ED) ON PRACTICE NOTE (PN)  
820 (REVISED), THE AUDIT OF LICENSED CORPORATIONS AND ASSOCIATED  
ENTITIES OF INTERMEDIARIES**

***Comments to be received by 28 November 2024***

The Hong Kong Institute of Certified Public Accountants' (Institute) Auditing and Assurance Standards Committee is seeking comments on the ED which has been posted on the Institute's website at:

<https://www.hkicpa.org.hk/en/Standards-setting/Standards/Open-for-comment-documents/Auditing-and-Assurance>

To introduce the Regulatory Regime for Depositories of SFC-authorized Collective Investment Schemes (Type 13 regulated activity or "RA 13"), amendments to Schedule 5 of the Securities and Futures Ordinance ("SFO") and the following subsidiary legislation were gazetted on 24 March 2023:

- The Securities and Futures (Client Securities) Rules ("CSR");
- The Securities and Futures (Client Money) Rules ("CMR");
- The Securities and Futures (Keeping of Records) Rules ("KRR");
- The Securities and Futures (Financial Resources) Rules ("FRR"); and
- The Securities and Futures (Accounts and Audit) Rules ("AAR").

The RA 13 regime came into effect on 2 October 2024. The first auditor's compliance reporting for RA 13 intermediaries will be for the year ending on 31 December 2024.

PN 820 is now revised for reporting in relation to the implementation of RA 13 as a result of the amended SFO and subsidiary legislation. The revisions have been made in consultation with the Securities and Futures Commission.

The key changes are as follows:

- (a) Amended the relevant definitions and paragraphs for the amended SFO and subsidiary legislation as set out above;
- (b) Included guidance for reporting under the RA 13 regime throughout the PN where appropriate;
- (c) Amended Appendix 1 to provide guidance for reporting on client assets for non-RA 13 and on scheme assets for RA 13;
- (d) Amended the example compliance reports in Appendix 2 for the amended subsidiary legislation; and
- (e) Amended the example management representation letter in Appendix 3 for the amended subsidiary legislation.



The revised PN will be effective for audits of financial statements for periods ending on or after 31 December 2024.

In order for readers to easily identify all the proposed changes, a marked-up version is provided.

In accordance with the Institute's due process, comments are invited from any interested party and the Institute would like to hear from both those who do agree and those who do not agree with the contents of the ED.

Comments should be supported by specific reasoning and should be submitted in written form.


To allow your comments on the ED to be considered, comments are requested by the due date shown above.

Comments may be sent by mail, fax or e-mail to:

Standard Setting Department  
Hong Kong Institute of Certified Public Accountants  
37/F., Wu Chung House  
213 Queen's Road East  
Hong Kong

Fax number (+852) 2865 6603  
E-mail: [commentletters@hkipa.org.hk](mailto:commentletters@hkipa.org.hk)

Comments will be acknowledged and may be made available for public review unless otherwise requested by the contributor.



29 October 2024  
Invitation to Comment

---

Response Due Date  
28 November 2024

*Exposure Draft*

---

**Practice Note 820 (Revised),  
*The Audit of Licensed Corporations and  
Associated Entities of Intermediaries***

PN 820 (Revised)  
Issued December 2014; revised March 2016,  
October 2016, December 2020, December 2021,  
May 2022, January 2024, June 2024, [ ] 2024\*

---

Effective for audits of financial statements for periods  
ending on or after 31 December 2024

*Practice Note 820 (Revised)*

---

# **The Audit of Licensed Corporations and Associated Entities of Intermediaries**

\* PN 820 (Revised) has been updated for amendments made to the Securities and Futures Ordinance and the subsidiary legislation as a result of the implementation of the new regulated activity, Type 13 (“RA 13”). The RA 13 regime is effective from 2 October 2024 and the first auditor’s reporting will be for the year ending 31 December 2024.

**COPYRIGHT**

Copyright © 2024 Hong Kong Institute of Certified Public Accountants

This Practice Note contains Hong Kong Institute of Certified Public Accountants copyright material. Reproduction in unaltered form (retaining this notice) is permitted for personal and noncommercial use subject to the inclusion of an acknowledgment of the source. Requests and inquiries concerning reproduction and rights for commercial purposes should be addressed to Hong Kong Institute of Certified Public Accountants, 37/F., Wu Chung House, 213 Queen's Road East, Wanchai, Hong Kong.

**PRACTICE NOTE  
820 (REVISED)  
THE AUDIT OF LICENSED CORPORATIONS AND  
ASSOCIATED ENTITIES OF INTERMEDIARIES**

*(Effective for audits of financial statements for periods ending on or after 31 December 2024)*

<i>Contents</i>	<i>Paragraphs</i>
<b><u>PART I – GENERAL</u></b>	
<b>Introduction</b>	<b>1 - 7</b>
<b>Definitions</b>	<b>8</b>
<b>Legislation and regulatory requirements</b>	<b>9 - 26</b>
<b><u>PART II - THE AUDIT OF FINANCIAL STATEMENTS</u></b>	
<b>Introduction</b>	<b>27</b>
<b>Agreeing the terms of audit engagement</b>	<b>28 - 29</b>
<b>Audit planning</b>	<b>30 - 46</b>
<b>Consideration of laws and regulations</b>	<b>47 - 62</b>
<b>Use of information technology</b>	<b>63 - 68</b>
<b>Using a service organization</b>	<b>69 - 71</b>
<b>Specific application guidance on client assets</b>	<b>72 - 80</b>
<b>Subsequent events</b>	<b>81</b>
<b>Going concern</b>	<b>82 - 84</b>
<b>Written representations</b>	<b>85</b>
<b><u>PART III - AUDITOR'S REPORTS UNDER THE SECURITIES AND FUTURES (ACCOUNTS AND AUDIT) RULES</u></b>	
<b>Introduction</b>	<b>86</b>
<b>Management's responsibilities</b>	<b>87 - 90</b>
<b>Auditor's responsibilities and reporting requirements</b>	<b>91 - 99</b>
<b>Guidance on the reporting requirements of the Compliance Report</b>	<b>100 - 122</b>

**PART IV - OTHER REPORTING CONSIDERATIONS**

Audit Questionnaire	123 - 125
Account Disclosure Document	126
Cessation of Activities	127 - 128

**PART V - COMMUNICATIONS BETWEEN THE AUDITOR AND THE SECURITIES AND FUTURES COMMISSION**

Introduction	129 - 133
The auditor to lodge report with the SFC in certain cases	134 - 143
Other communications by the auditor	144 - 166
The auditor's duty of secrecy	167 - 172
Communications by the SFC to the auditor under section 378(3)(h) of the SFO	173 - 175

**APPENDIX 1 - CLIENT ASSETS**

- A. CLIENT SECURITIES AND SCHEME SECURITIES
- B. CLIENT MONEY AND SCHEME MONEY
- C. NO CLIENT ASSETS

**APPENDIX 2 - EXAMPLES OF AUDITOR'S REPORTS**

Example 1 - auditor's report on financial statements - regulated entity

Example 2 - compliance report by the auditor - licensed corporation

Example 3 - compliance report by the auditor - associated entity of intermediary

Example 4 – example modified auditor's assurance reports

**APPENDIX 3 – EXAMPLE OF MANAGEMENT REPRESENTATION LETTER**

Practice Note (PN) 820 (Revised), *The Audit of Licensed Corporations and Associated Entities of Intermediaries* should be read in the context of the *Preface to the Hong Kong Quality Management, Auditing, Review, Other Assurance, and Related Services Pronouncements*.

**PRACTICE NOTE  
820 (REVISED)  
THE AUDIT OF LICENSED CORPORATIONS AND  
ASSOCIATED ENTITIES OF INTERMEDIARIES**

*The purpose of Practice Notes issued by the Hong Kong Institute of Certified Public Accountants (HKICPA) is to assist the auditor in applying Hong Kong Engagement Standards of general application to particular circumstances and industries.*

*Practice Notes are persuasive rather than prescriptive. However they are indicative of good practice and have similar status to the explanatory material in Hong Kong Engagement Standards. This Practice Note provides guidance to assist the auditor to fulfill the objectives of the engagement. The auditor should be prepared to explain departures when called upon to do so.*

**PART I – GENERAL**

**Introduction**

1. The purpose of this Practice Note (PN) is to assist the auditor to develop an approach to the audit of the financial statements of licensed corporations and associated entities of intermediaries. This is dealt with in Part II of this PN.
2. This PN also provides guidance on the auditor's other reporting responsibilities under the Securities and Futures Ordinance (SFO) which are set out in the Securities and Futures (Accounts and Audit) Rules. This is dealt with in Part III of this PN.
3. Guidance on the completion of the Securities and Futures Commission's (SFC's) Audit Questionnaire by the auditor and other reporting considerations are set out in Part IV of this PN.
4. The auditor is entitled under the SFO to report directly to the SFC in exceptional circumstances and, in some cases, has a duty to do so. Guidance on such ad hoc reporting is set out in Part V of this PN.
5. This PN has been prepared in consultation with the SFC.
6. This PN is based on the SFO in effect as at 2 October 2024, and the subsidiary legislation, codes and guidelines issued by the SFC up to 2 October 2024. Every care has been taken in its preparation. However, the legislation itself is the sole authority of the law and this PN should be used in conjunction with the legislation.
7. It should be borne in mind that certain expressions used in the SFO may be matters for legal interpretation. There may, therefore, be circumstances in which, notwithstanding the guidance given in this PN, the auditor will wish to seek legal advice.



## Definitions

8. The definitions used in this PN are:

a. *Associated entity*

A company that is in a controlling entity relationship with an intermediary and receives or holds in Hong Kong client assets of the intermediary.

b. *Client assets*

As defined in section 1 in Schedule 1 of the SFO.

c. *Client asset rules*

Securities and Futures (Client Money) Rules and Securities and Futures (Client Securities) Rules.

d. *Codes and guidelines*

Codes and guidelines issued by the SFC under the SFO.

e. *Control Techniques for Client Asset Rules*

“Suggested Control Techniques and Procedures for Enhancing a Firm’s Ability to Comply with the Securities and Futures (Client Securities) Rules and the Securities and Futures (Client Money) Rules” issued by the SFC.

f. *FRR*

Securities and Futures (Financial Resources) Rules.

g. *Intermediary*

A licensed corporation or a registered institution.

h. *Internal Control Guidelines*

“Management, Supervision and Internal Control Guidelines for Persons Licensed by or Registered with the Securities and Futures Commission” issued by the SFC.

i. *Licensed corporation*

A corporation which is granted a licence by the SFC under Part V of the SFO for a regulated activity.

j. *Liquid assets*

Such assets as are prescribed in Division 3 of Part 4 of the FRR.

k. *Liquid capital*

The amount by which liquid assets exceeds ranking liabilities.

l. *Open-ended fund company*

As defined in Section 112A of the SFO.

m. *Ranking liabilities*

The amounts required under Division 4 of Part 4 of the FRR.

n. *Registered institution*

An authorized financial institution registered under Part V of the SFO.

o. *Regulated activities*

As prescribed in Schedule 5 of the SFO.

p. *Regulated entity*

A licensed corporation or an associated entity of an intermediary.

q. *Relevant Collective Investment Scheme ("Relevant CIS")*

As defined in Part 2 of Schedule 5 of the SFO.

r. *Relevant CIS account*

As defined in section 10A of the Securities and Futures (Client Money) Rules.

s. *Relevant CIS property*

As defined in Part 2 of Schedule 5 of the SFO.

t. *Reportable matter*

A matter that in the opinion of the person acting as an auditor within the meaning of section 157(1)(a) of the SFO –

(a) in the case of a licensed corporation –

- (i) constitutes on the part of the licensed corporation or any of its associated entities a failure to comply with any prescribed requirement;
- (ii) adversely affects to a material extent the financial position of the licensed corporation or any of its associated entities; or
- (iii) constitutes on the part of the licensed corporation a failure to comply with section 146 or with all or any of the requirements of the financial resources rules that apply to it; or

(b) in the case of an associated entity of an intermediary –

- (i) constitutes on the part of the associated entity a failure to comply with any prescribed requirement; or
- (ii) where the associated entity is not an authorized financial institution, adversely affects to a material extent the financial position of the associated entity.

u. *Scheme documents*

As defined in Part 2 of Schedule 5 to the SFO.

v. *Scheme assets*

As defined in section 2 of the Securities and Futures (Keeping of Records) Rules.

w. *Scheme money*

As defined in section 10A of the Securities and Futures (Client Money) Rules where the Securities and Futures (Client Money) Rules apply, or as defined in section 2 of the

Securities and Futures (Keeping of Records) Rules, the Securities and Futures (Accounts and Audit) Rules or the Securities and Futures (Financial Resources) Rules, when these rules apply.

x. *Scheme securities*

As defined in section 2 of the Securities and Futures (Client Securities) Rules where the Securities and Futures (Client Securities) Rules apply, or as defined in section 2 of the Securities and Futures (Keeping of Records) Rules and the Securities and Futures (Accounts and Audit) Rules, when these rules apply.

y. *Segregated account*

A segregated account established and maintained under section 4(1) and (2) or, where Part 3 of these Rules applies, section 10B(1), (2), (3) and (4) of the Securities and Futures (Client Money) Rules or under section 5(1) and (2), section 9B of the Securities and Futures (Client Securities) Rules.

z. *SFC*

Securities and Futures Commission.

aa. *SFO*

Securities and Futures Ordinance.

ab. *Sub-fund*

As defined in section 10A of the Securities and Futures (Client Money Rules).

ac. *Systems of control*

The internal controls and trading, accounting, settlement, stock holding systems and holding systems for scheme securities that a licensed corporation or an associated entity of an intermediary has implemented to ensure its compliance with the applicable provisions of the client asset rules.

ad. *Written instruction*

As defined in section 9C of the Securities and Futures (Client Securities) Rules and section 10A of the Securities and Futures (Client Money) Rules.

## Legislation and regulatory requirements

### The SFO

9. Under the licensing and registration regime of the SFO, any business entity which carries on or holds itself out as carrying on a business in a regulated activity in Hong Kong is required to be licensed by or registered with the SFC. It is a serious offence to act as an intermediary in Hong Kong without the appropriate licence or registration.
10. The SFC administers the regulation of the regulated activities and assumes the duties of front-line regulator of licensed corporations. It also applies certain requirements to associated entities of intermediaries in relation to their receipt and holding of client assets (including scheme assets). The SFC is also responsible for all investigations and disciplinary matters under the SFO, subsidiary legislation, codes and guidelines.
11. Regulated entities must observe at all times all the provisions of the SFO, subsidiary legislation, codes and guidelines. In association with these requirements, regulated entities must file audited annual financial statements within four months of the financial year end to the SFC.
12. The SFO is designed to protect investors and, therefore, is concerned with ensuring that regulated activities in Hong Kong are conducted in accordance with the relevant regulations and rules by persons who are fit and proper and are licensed or registered to conduct such business.
13. The regulatory powers of the SFC are primarily vested in the SFO.

#### *Regulated activities*

14. The SFO covers different types of regulated activities as prescribed in Schedule 5 of the SFO.
15. In the context of Type 13 regulated activity, “scheme assets” may be regarded as a subset of “client assets”, “scheme securities” as a subset of “client securities” and “scheme money as a subset of “client money”. Dealing with scheme assets, including scheme money and scheme securities, is only applicable to an intermediary or its associated entity in the conduct of Type 13 regulated activity.

#### *Auditor’s statutory rights and duties*

16. Guidance on the auditor’s statutory rights and duties under the SFO is given in Parts III and V of this PN.

### Regulatory requirements

17. The SFO provides a framework for the regulation of regulated entities in Hong Kong and the detailed requirements are set out in subsidiary legislation, codes or guidelines issued by the SFC. Each regulated entity is bound by all these requirements, where applicable, to remain fit and proper. The main provisions of the SFO, subsidiary legislation, codes or guidelines are set out in the following paragraphs but they are not a substitute for the legislation and rules themselves. In addition, the SFC has posted a series of “Frequently Asked Questions” on its website which provide a useful source of reference on how to interpret specific circumstances which may arise.

#### *Licensing and registration*

18. Persons carrying on business in a regulated activity in Hong Kong are required to have successfully applied for a licence, or a registration in the case of an authorized financial institution. In addition, they must remain fit and proper at all times.

#### *Business conduct*

19. This is the ongoing requirement expected of a regulated entity in conducting its business and is designed to ensure that adequate standards are maintained in dealings with clients.

20. The requirements for business conduct are set out either in the legislation or in non-statutory codes of conduct or guidelines. Breach of legislation is subject to criminal sanctions and breach of any codes of conduct or guidelines may be taken into account in determining fitness and properness. The auditor has no requirement to express an opinion on the business conduct of a regulated entity but should be aware of the requirements.

*Client assets (including scheme assets)*

21. The client asset rules apply to regulated entities that control or are otherwise responsible for client assets (including scheme assets) and they cover the proper protection of these assets. There are two sets of rules:
- a. one dealing with client securities (including scheme securities); and
  - b. the other dealing with client money (including scheme money) (not applicable to an associated entity of a registered institution or an associated entity of a licensed corporation where the associated entity is an authorized financial institution).
22. The Securities and Futures (Client Securities) Rules require client securities (including scheme securities) and securities collateral received or held in Hong Kong to be treated by regulated entities in a prescribed manner.
23. The Securities and Futures (Client Money) Rules require segregation of client money (including scheme money) received or held in Hong Kong by licensed corporations and their associated entities (not applicable to an associated entity of a registered institution or an associated entity of a licensed corporation where the associated entity is an authorized financial institution) in a prescribed manner.

*Record keeping*

24. The Securities and Futures (Keeping of Records) Rules are rules for the keeping of accounts and records by regulated entities. Such records are required to contain sufficient details to explain business activities and operations and account for their client assets (including scheme assets), and to be retained for a specified period of time. Section 3 of the Securities and Futures (Keeping of Records) Rules set out the general record keeping requirements for intermediaries, in particular, Schedule 1 lists out the records to be kept by intermediaries under section 3(2)(a). Section 3A<sup>1</sup> of the Securities and Futures (Keeping of Records) Rules set out the general record keeping for intermediaries licensed or registered for Type 13 regulated activity, in particular, Schedule 2 lists out the records to be kept by intermediaries under section 3A(3).

*Financial resources requirements*

25. The FRR are made to ensure that licensed corporations are financially sound and have the resources to provide adequate services to investors.
26. Licensed corporations are subject to minimum paid-up capital and liquid capital requirements. The requirements are different for different regulated activities. However, where a corporation is licensed for more than one regulated activity, the highest of the paid-up share capital and liquid capital requirements which are applicable to the different regulated activities will apply.

---

<sup>1</sup> For intermediaries licensed or registered for Type 13 regulated activity, records of relevant CIS property, which may cover wider asset classes than scheme assets, are required to be kept in accordance with section 3A of the Securities and Futures (Keeping of Records) Rules.

## PART II - THE AUDIT OF FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

### Introduction

27. Hong Kong Standards on Auditing (HKSA) apply to the audit of the financial statements of any entity, irrespective of the size of the entity, its legal form, or the nature of its activities. The commentary which follows identifies the special considerations arising from the application of certain individual HKSA to the audit of the financial statements of a regulated entity, and suggests ways in which these can be addressed.

### Agreeing the terms of audit engagement

28. An auditor's engagement letter would normally cover reporting requirements under the Securities and Futures (Accounts and Audit) Rules and in particular, the auditor's rights and duties to report directly to the SFC. An auditor should understand that compliance or regulatory reporting is a separate engagement from the audit of financial statements and ensure that appropriate terms of engagement are agreed before the commencement of the audit engagement. Further guidance of the respective responsibilities of the management of the regulated entities and of the auditor is provided in Parts III and IV of this PN.
29. The engagement letter makes it clear that the statutory duty to report places an obligation on the auditor to report matters if found and does not involve undertaking additional work to identify them. It also clarifies that the auditor may sometimes consider it necessary to report directly to the SFC without the client's prior knowledge or consent.

### Audit planning

#### Understanding the regulated entity and its environment

30. Regulated entities can be complex and the auditor would seek to understand the business and the regulatory regime in which they operate. The auditor would ensure that the audit engagement is performed/overseen by staff with sufficient knowledge about the licensed corporation's operations, market practices, the products handled by the licensed corporation and the SFC regulations for regulated activities carried out by the licensed corporation. A fundamental principle embodied in the HKICPA *Code of Ethics for Professional Accountants* is that the auditor does not accept or perform work which it is not competent to undertake<sup>2</sup>. The auditor may also consider the use of technical specialists, for example where the business is trading in complex products or is heavily reliant on e-commerce. Generally, there is a close relationship between planning and understanding the entity and an understanding of the high level control environment.
31. To avoid potential duplication of audit effort, the audit approach to a regulated entity normally addresses the audit of the financial statements and the work required for reporting under the Securities and Futures (Accounts and Audit) Rules together. The auditor plans so as to ensure that its audit work on the financial statements and the regulatory reporting is completed within timescales imposed by the SFC. The audit plan for a regulated entity typically explains the legal and regulatory background and, in order to reduce audit risk, discusses those areas where the auditor's responsibilities are different from those for other types of entity.
32. Risk assessment procedures are defined as the audit procedures performed to obtain an understanding of the entity and its environment, including the entity's internal control, to identify and assess the risks of material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error, at the financial statement and assertion levels.

---

<sup>2</sup> Auditors may refer to Alert Issue 35 issued by the HKICPA for guidance and the link is: <https://www.hkicpa.org.hk/-/media/HKICPA-Website/New-HKICPA/Standards-and-regulation/QA/2020/Issue-35---Compliance-work-for-regulated-entities.pdf#page=1>

33. A thorough understanding and assessment of the risks of material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error, in the financial statements is fundamental to performing an efficient and effective audit.
34. The risk of material misstatement are influenced by but not limited to the following factors:
  - a. the markets and industries in which the regulated entity operates;
  - b. the characteristics of the engagement and of the regulated entity's management; and
  - c. the internal control environment of the regulated entity.
35. As part of the normal procedures undertaken for the purposes of the audit of the financial statements and reporting under the Securities and Futures (Accounts and Audit) Rules, the auditor would gain an understanding of the regulated entity's operations, including the nature of the business carried out. They would also obtain an understanding of the control environment that exists, including the regulated entity's high level controls for complying with the applicable codes and guidelines.
36. Such an understanding will provide an indication of the extent to which the tone-at-the-top and controls in a regulated entity are conducive to compliance, for example through consideration of:
  - a. the adequacy of procedures and training to inform staff of the requirements of the applicable codes and guidelines to ensure that they meet those requirements;
  - b. adequacy of authority and supervision;
  - c. the review of compliance by senior management;
  - d. procedures to ensure that possible incidents of non-compliance are investigated by an appropriate person and are brought to the attention of senior management;
  - e. the authority of, and resources available to, the compliance officer, internal auditor and those in charge of compliance functions; and
  - f. the establishment of policies and controls to combat money laundering and terrorist financing.

#### **Assessing internal controls and risk**

37. Underlying any systems of control adopted by a regulated entity is the control environment. Such an environment is created by management having and showing a positive attitude towards the operation of controls and by an organizational framework which enables proper segregation and delegation of control functions and which encourages failings to be reported and corrected. Thus, where a lapse in the operation of a control is treated as a matter of concern, rather than being largely overlooked, the control environment will be stronger and will contribute to effective systems of control; whereas a weak control environment will undermine detailed controls, however well designed.
38. In making an assessment of various risk factors, the auditor would normally meet senior management and the Compliance Officer as part of its planning process. It would also consider the following:
  - a. operational manuals;
  - b. documentation of systems and controls;
  - c. compliance monitoring programmes and results;

- d. the records maintained by the regulated entity of any non-compliances and notifications to the SFC that may have occurred during the financial year under review;
  - e. correspondence with the SFC relating to financial returns and any other matters;
  - f. the results of inspection visits made by the SFC;
  - g. the register of complaints received from clients during the financial year under review;
  - h. any relevant internal audit reports; and
  - i. any unresolved items from previously issued management letters on internal control weakness.
39. There is a wide variation between different regulated entities in terms of size, activity and organization, so that there can be no standard approach to internal controls and risk. The auditor assesses the adequacy of controls in relation to the circumstances of each entity. The following factors would normally be considered by the auditor in assessing whether there may be an increased level of inherent risk of material misstatement:
- a. the nature and status of the regulated entity and any changes in its status which may affect the application of protection of client assets (including scheme assets) requirements;
  - b. a change in the market environment (for example, high volatility);
  - c. the introduction of new clients or products or marketing and distribution methods;
  - d. the risk profile of business undertaken, the complexity and consistency of products, methods and operations in different departments or locations;
  - e. client profile (retail vs. institutional);
  - f. existence of claims and complaints by clients;
  - g. the legal and operational structure of the regulated entity, the number of branches or sales offices (see paragraph 41 below);
  - h. where a group structure exists, the financial and managerial support provided to and by other group companies;
  - i. management's attitude towards regulation, compliance and control and its appreciation of the importance of investor protection;
  - j. the respective roles and responsibilities attributed to the finance, internal audit and compliance functions;
  - k. the recruitment, competence, training and supervision of personnel (e.g. the use of licensed representatives); and
  - l. the integrity, competence and experience of management.
40. Regulated entities vary greatly in the complexity of their operations and hence the auditor may consider whether to take a reliance approach on the internal controls of a regulated entity. Attention should be paid in cases where the accounting system is at risk of failing to capture transactions which do not involve the immediate movement of funds - such as trading in certain derivative instruments or underwriting. A sound understanding of the process is required in order to guard against the risk of unrecorded or mis-recorded transactions.
41. Some regulated entities operate a network of branches. In such instances, the auditor determines the degree of head office control over the business and accounting functions at the branch office and the scope and effectiveness of the regulated entity's inspection and/or internal audit visits. Where branches maintain separate accounting records, the extent of audit visits and work on



each branch is also dependent on the materiality of, and risks associated with, the operations of each branch and the extent to which controls over branches are exercised centrally. In the case of smaller branches, the degree to which exceptions to the regulated entity's normal control procedures may be caused by minimal staffing levels (the greater difficulty of ensuring adequate segregation of duties, for example) and the consequential need for an increased level of control from outside the branch are relevant to audit planning.

42. As the nature of the business undertaken by a regulated entity, its size and its particular circumstances will affect the nature and extent of the auditor's work. Certain risks will not be applicable to all regulated entities. Factors that will be considered in relation to the nature of the particular regulated entity are:
  - a. the scope of licensing in relation to the holding of client assets (including scheme assets);
  - b. the extent of investment management discretion permitted;
  - c. the introduction of new and revised requirements, with reference to the up-to-date FAQs sections on the SFC website;
  - d. changes to existing requirements; and
  - e. modifications or waivers granted or special conditions imposed by the SFC.
43. The size of the regulated entity will have an important bearing on the design and formality of the systems and controls. The operating procedures and methods of recording and processing transactions used by small regulated entities often differ significantly from those of large regulated entities. Internal controls which would be relevant to a large regulated entity, may not be practical or appropriate to a small one. Management of a small regulated entity has less need to depend on formal controls for the reliability of the records and other information, because of personal contact with, or involvement in, the operation of the business itself. Nevertheless the need for a positive attitude to the control environment is equally relevant in both small and large regulated entities.
44. Systems of control, including the assignment of responsibilities as set out in the Internal Control Guidelines, need to be clearly documented if they are to be understood, communicated and operated effectively and consistently. A regulated entity and its auditor would consider whether appropriate documentation is a prerequisite of an adequate system.
45. The effective operation of a control system may be enhanced by an internal audit department or by specific monitoring performed by a compliance department. The existence of such departments and their scope and objectives are matters for management. In assessing the effectiveness of such departments, the auditor will consider the terms of reference of the departments, their independence from operational personnel and management, the quality of staffing and to whom they report in the regulated entity.

#### **Identifying risks relating to fraud**

46. The following factors which may indicate an increased risk of fraud may be especially relevant for a regulated entity (this list is not exhaustive):
  - a. backlogs in key reconciliations, particularly those with brokers and exchanges and for bank accounts and safe custody accounts - both the regulated entity's own and those relating to its clients;
  - b. inadequate segregation of duties between the front, middle and back office staff (i.e. "incompatible functions");
  - c. complex products and transactions inadequately understood by management;
  - d. inadequate definition of management responsibilities and supervision of staff;

- e. elements of the remuneration package (particularly bonuses) for certain staff which are highly geared in relation to reported profits or revenues;
- f. existence of hold mail arrangements, operation of discretionary accounts, and issuance and acceptance of third party or cash cheques;
- g. volatility in the market place;
- h. no established compliance culture or inadequate internal controls;
- i. risk of management override of controls;
- j. exceptionally low level of cash which is inconsistent with the regulated entity's business model;
- k. exceptionally high level of leverage which is inconsistent with the regulated entity's business model (such as a cash broker persistently borrowing exceptionally high amount of bank loan); and
- l. exceptionally large amount of past due client receivables.

Additional factors relevant for regulated entities can be found in the SFC's website which contain press releases and circulars providing examples of malpractices and advisory circulars of compliance areas.

### **Consideration of laws and regulations**

- 47. The auditor shall also obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence regarding compliance with the provisions of those laws and regulations generally recognized to have a direct effect on the determination of material amounts and disclosures in the financial statements.
- 48. The auditor needs to recognize particularly that some laws and regulations (including any licensing conditions imposed on the regulated entity, its responsible officers or licensed representatives) are central to the regulated entity's ability to conduct its business as compliance is a prerequisite of obtaining a licence to operate. Non-compliance may result in the regulated entity ceasing operations, or call into question the regulated entity's status as a going concern.
- 49. The auditor of the regulated entity will normally:
  - a. discuss with the regulated entity's general counsel, compliance officer, internal auditor and other personnel responsible for compliance to obtain an understanding of the regulated entity's policies and procedures as to how it complies with the applicable laws and regulations and how it detects non-compliance; and review any work on compliance matters carried out by them;
  - b. inquire of management as to whether the regulated entity is in compliance with the applicable laws and regulations;
  - c. read the SFC's press releases and public register of licensed persons on its website for any disciplinary actions or licensing conditions imposed on the regulated entity, its responsible officers or licensed representatives;
  - d. review correspondence between the regulated entity and the SFC; and
  - e. assess the actual or contingent consequences arising from non-compliance and consider the impact on the financial statements.

The auditor should be alert to findings of the above and other audit procedures performed that may indicate instances of non-compliance. For example, a licensed corporation which is an

introducing agent may be subject to certain conditions, including but not limited to not holding client assets, imposed on its licence and any breach of which may affect the fitness and properness of the licensed corporation to remain licensed. The auditor may consider, where appropriate, carrying out additional audit procedures in response to any suspected non-compliance identified.

50. The auditor has no obligation to seek out breaches of the law, codes and guidelines and no direct reporting responsibility in respect of the codes and guidelines issued by the SFC. However, the auditor would ensure that members of the audit team have a general understanding of the applicable codes and guidelines, sufficient to enable them to be alert to possible non-compliances which may come to their attention. The auditor would also include procedures within their planning process to ensure that members of the audit team are able to recognize reportable matters which are encountered in their audit work and that such matters are escalated without delay. Breaches of such codes and guidelines may:
  - a. give rise to claims by investors against the regulated entity; and
  - b. attract regulatory consequences, such as disciplinary actions which may include pecuniary fine, or cause the regulated entity to have its business restricted or, in extreme cases, have its licence suspended or revoked so threatening its viability as a going concern.
51. The auditor will also be aware that breaches of the codes and guidelines could have consequences for other matters which are the subject of the auditor's reporting responsibilities to the SFC for example, financial resources, accounting records and the handling of client assets (including scheme assets).
52. The auditor needs to be alert to any indication that a regulated entity is conducting business outside the scope of its licence or in violation of any licensing conditions imposed on its licence as this may affect the fitness and properness of the regulated entity to remain licensed or even amount to an offence under the SFO.
53. Where an apparent non-compliance of the codes and guidelines comes to the auditor's attention, it needs to ensure that the implications for its reporting responsibilities are correctly identified.
54. The auditor would enquire of management and staff whether any non-compliances have occurred and obtain appropriate representations from management, preferably in writing, addressing any possible non-compliances which have come to their attention.
55. The auditor would also note that the codes and guidelines issued by the SFC are not exhaustive in nature and auditor would always exercise professional judgment in determining the adequacy of controls and certain behaviours/conduct.
56. In discharging its reporting responsibilities regarding a regulated entity, the auditor must have particular regard to any changes in the SFO and its subsidiary legislation and any other requirements of the SFC in force during the financial year to which the report relates.

#### **Communication for breach of laws and regulations issued by the SFC**

57. Unless there are reasons for supposing a report would be made directly to the SFC (see Part V of this PN), the auditor would discuss promptly with appropriate management of the regulated entity (including the compliance officer) apparent breaches of the law, codes and guidelines, or instances where a regulated entity may be carrying on activities outside the scope of its authorization, which come to the auditor's attention in the course of the audit. This will both enable the auditor to determine the impact of the matter on its reporting obligations, and permit appropriate corrective action to be taken by management.
58. Breaches or possible breaches of the law, codes and guidelines which come to the auditor's attention and which neither require the auditor to make a report to the SFC under the statutory duty provisions of the SFO, nor require its auditor's report to be qualified, will be considered for inclusion in the auditor's management letter.

59. The SFC may request a copy of the auditor's management letter from the regulated entity. Against this background, the auditor may consider to include in the management letter to directors or management a statement that:
- a. the management letter has been prepared for the sole use of the regulated entity;
  - b. it must not be disclosed to a third party (except to the SFC), or quoted or referred to, without the written consent of the auditor; and
  - c. no responsibility is assumed by the auditor to any other person.

### **Correspondence and notes of meetings with the SFC subject to section 378 of the SFO**

60. If the auditor becomes aware of correspondence and notes of meetings with the SFC which are subject to the secrecy provisions of section 378 of the SFO, the auditor should request the regulated entity to seek the SFC's consent for the regulated entity to disclose the correspondence and notes of meetings with the SFC to the auditor. Paragraphs 173 to 175 provide additional information on the circumstances that the SFC may communicate to the auditor matters pertinent to a regulated entity for the purpose of enabling or assisting the SFC to perform its functions under any of the relevant provisions and Appendix 3 of this PN provides suggestions for additional representation to be obtained by the auditor from management in such circumstances.
61. The auditor should also refer to the FAQs<sup>3</sup> issued by the SFC on application of section 378 of the SFO to disclosure of supervisory information by licensed corporations and the clarification<sup>4</sup> made by the SFC on application of the secrecy provisions to enforcement related matters.
62. As explained in paragraph 173 below, the SFC is able to disclose information directly to the auditor. Where such a matter has been brought to the attention of the auditor, it considers the implications for its work and may amend its approach accordingly. However, the fact that it may have been informed of such a matter by the SFC does not, of itself, require the auditor to change the scope of its work, nor does it require the auditor actively to search for evidence in relation to the matter communicated by the SFC.

### **Use of information technology**

63. The use of information technology (IT) in the information system by regulated entities is common. Processes in which a regulated entity employs IT may include, where applicable, but are not limited to:
- Account opening
  - Placement of clients' trade and other orders
  - Order or investment management (e.g. high frequency trading, algorithm trading)
  - Investment advising (e.g. robo-advising)
  - Settlement of clients' trades
  - Record keeping and issuing trade documents
  - Compliance
  - Management of market, credit, liquidity or other risks
  - Subscription and redemption
  - Valuation/price/net asset value calculation monitoring
  - Distribution payments
  - Cash flow monitoring and reconciliation
  - Investment monitoring

<sup>3</sup> The FAQs can be found in the link: <https://www.sfc.hk/web/EN/faqs/intermediaries/supervision/application-of-section-378-of-the-sfo-to-disclosure-of-supervisory-information-by-licensed-corporations/17.12.2018.html#1>

<sup>4</sup> The clarification can be found in the link: <https://www.sfc.hk/web/EN/regulatory-functions/enforcement/secrecy-provision.html>

64. The auditor would consider how the use of IT in the information system affects the audit. The use of IT may be integral to the business of a regulated entity due to the high volume of transactions and the linkages to various third party systems. IT is also used by regulated entities to prepare financial statements and regulatory reports to the SFC. When a regulated entity employs IT, the auditor should obtain an understanding on the regulated entity's use of IT in the information system and consider the impact of IT to the risk of material misstatements in the financial statements and to the conclusion of the compliance report.
65. There is a wide variation between different regulated entities in terms of size, activity, organization and complexity and reliance of IT, so that there can be no standard approach to identify and assess the potential risks and relevant internal controls. The auditor should exercise professional judgements to determine the scope of testing on the relevant IT controls.
66. If the use of IT system is significant, the following factors would also be considered by the auditor in assessing whether there may be an increased level of inherent risk of material misstatements in the financial statements.

- Access to programs and data

Policies and procedures that determine only authorized access is granted to programs and data upon authentication of a user's identity. Controls over access to programs and data include the processes used by the regulated entity for user account creation, termination, and modification (both business users and other appropriate personnel) and their related access rights.

- Program changes

Policies and procedures that determine changes to programs are requested, authorized, performed, tested, and implemented to achieve management's application control objectives.

- Computer operations

Procedures or mechanisms in place to ensure that production systems are processed as approved, that production problems are corrected to ensure errors are not introduced.

- Program development and acquisition

Policies and procedures that determine applications are developed or acquired, configured, and implemented to achieve management's application control objectives. This domain is relevant only where significant development or acquisition, implementation, or conversion projects exist or are anticipated that will impact the risk of material misstatement to the current year's financial statements.

The auditor should also consider whether the IT control environment meets the control objectives set out in Appendix 1 in this PN when assessing the risk of non-compliance with client asset rules and how the IT system maintains all records as required under the Securities and Futures (Keeping of Records) Rules.

67. An effective IT control environment may allow the auditor to have more confidence in internal control and the reliability of audit evidence generated internally within the regulated entity. Deficiencies in the control environment, however, have the opposite effect.
68. As new information system technologies emerge, they are frequently employed by regulated entities to build increasingly complex computer systems that may include micro-to-mainframe links, distributed data bases, end user processing, and business management systems that feed information directly into the accounting systems. Such systems increase the overall complexity of IT environment and the complexity of the specific applications that they affect. As a result, they

may increase risk and require further consideration. The auditor should consider and assess how the regulated entity's IT control environment responds to the increasing risks.

### Using a service organization

69. Some regulated entities outsource a variety of activities. Specific examples include:
  - a. safe custody of client assets or relevant CIS property by a custodian;
  - b. settlement or clearing of trades (this may or may not include the third party taking on the settlement risk, maintaining accounting records, reconciling client assets (including scheme assets where applicable), sending client statements directly);
  - c. maintenance of books and records;
  - d. product administration (such as unit trusts or savings schemes);
  - e. investment management;
  - f. valuation of investments; and
  - g. electronic data storage and processing.
  
70. A regulated entity would ensure compliance with the law, codes and guidelines whether or not activities are outsourced. In addition, a regulated entity using a service organization would comply with the following requirements in respect of the outsourced activities:
  - a. ongoing assessment and monitoring of the competence and independence of the third party such as reviewing of reports issued in accordance with Hong Kong Standard on Assurance Engagements 3402 "Assurance Reports on Controls at a Service Organization" or other relevant service organization's internal control reports where available;
  - b. responsibility for keeping of records and regulatory requirements in relation to keeping of records, either electronically or not, at the third party;
  - c. responsibility for acts or omissions by the third party; and
  - d. regulatory requirements when information is processed electronically using the third party.
  
71. The auditor shall determine whether a sufficient understanding of the nature and significance of the services provided by the service organization and their effect on the regulated entity's internal control relevant to the audit has been obtained to provide a basis for the identification and assessment of potential risks of material misstatement. If the auditor is unable to obtain a sufficient understanding of the processing provided by the service organization to enable the auditor to evaluate the design and implementation of relevant controls then the auditor shall consider the impact on the reports.

### Specific application guidance on client assets

72. Regulated entities are specifically required by the SFC to have adequate systems of internal control over client assets (including scheme assets), which include appropriate systems to minimize the risk of losses to the business from irregularities, fraud or error.
  
73. Any material deficiency in the adequacy of internal controls over client assets (including scheme assets where applicable) will need to be reported in the compliance report (see paragraphs 113 to 118) to the SFC. In addition, any shortfall in client assets (including scheme assets where applicable), whether due to misappropriation or otherwise, may have significant implications on the regulated entity's compliance with the client asset rules and the financial position of the regulated entity. Such implications and impact could affect the opinions to be given by the auditor in its audit report and compliance report and trigger the auditor's obligation to report to the SFC under section 157 of the SFO. If the auditor considers that the regulated entity's system of control

over client assets (including scheme assets where applicable), or system of control to avoid receiving or holding client assets for a regulated entity which does not hold client assets are inadequate or decides that no reliance would be placed on the regulated entity's systems, the auditor would use its professional judgment to consider the use of fund tracing procedures or external circularization as a substantive procedure to obtain evidence on some of the control objectives, e.g. paragraphs 57, 59, 70, 72, 88 and 89 of Appendix 1 to this PN. Fund tracing means obtaining copies of sampled outward cheques issued by the regulated entity from the bank or copies of cheques deposited into the bank account of the regulated entity and verifying the identity of the payee or drawer against the regulated entity's accounting records.

74. Consideration as to whether or not to perform external circularization on client assets (including scheme assets where applicable) would be linked to the fraud risk assessment and the assessment of the quality of internal controls, particularly those over client assets (including scheme assets where applicable). Other factors such as prior experience in terms of the response rate of the confirmation and the quality of the responses received may be relevant. The auditor exercises its professional judgment to determine whether and how to go about the performance of a circularization of clients' account balances.
75. If external confirmations are not used, the auditor seeks sufficient appropriate evidence from tests of control and other substantive procedures. For example, the regulated entity may have well established controls in respect of trade capture, trade monitoring, reconciliations and account statements and it may also have an independent function responsible for periodic confirmation of balances with its clients. The auditor may consider it more effective to test these controls, in addition to other substantive procedures, rather than carry out its own confirmation procedures.
76. The higher the auditor's assessment of risk, the more important it is for the auditor to seek reliable and relevant audit evidence from substantive procedures. For example, if the auditor considers that the regulated entity has inadequate systems of control over client assets (including scheme assets where applicable), or the auditor decides not to rely on the entity's internal control systems, then external confirmations would be a strong substantive procedure.
77. Where relevant, the auditor may circularize external confirmations of client account balances together with client assets held for custody so as to obtain audit evidence to support the financial statement assertions and regulatory reporting items at the same time.
78. The auditor exercises its professional judgment to determine the necessary sample sizes to obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence in respect of a circularization of client account balances, including the following matters:
  - a. the auditor would exercise its judgment in determining the sample size in respect of the total population of client account balances both in terms of number of clients and the monetary value of client assets (including scheme assets where applicable). The auditor should also consider to circularize external confirmations on client accounts with zero account balances or assets holding if appropriate; and
  - b. a risk-based approach should be adopted for sampling client accounts for circularization whereby greater emphasis is placed on accounts which are more susceptible to misstatement or frauds, such as accounts under an arrangement to hold mail or to direct mail to the address of management or staff of the regulated entity, inactive and dormant accounts etc.
79. Negative confirmations provide less persuasive audit evidence than positive confirmations. Accordingly, the auditor should not use negative confirmation requests as the sole substantive audit procedure to address an assessed risk of material misstatement at the assertion level unless all of the following are present:
  - a. The auditor has assessed the risk of material misstatement as low and has obtained sufficient appropriate audit evidence regarding the operating effectiveness of controls relevant to the assertion;

- b. The population of items subject to negative confirmation procedures comprises a large number of small, homogeneous account balances, transactions or conditions;
  - c. A very low exception rate is expected; and
  - d. The auditor is not aware of circumstances or conditions that would cause recipients of negative confirmation requests to disregard such requests.
80. Below is a list of procedures which may be considered by the auditor when executing a circularization of client account balances:
- a. appropriate audit steps should be taken to ensure the completeness of the list of clients from which samples are drawn;
  - b. the auditor would independently select samples for circularization;
  - c. the confirmation would be prepared in language that the clients of the regulated entity are familiar with;
  - d. the auditor should ensure that the client particulars (such as the name and address of the client) stated in statements of account to be sent to the clients for confirmation agree to the regulated entity's latest client information. Furthermore, the auditor should also ensure that the account balances and assets holding in the statements of account sampled for confirmation are consistent with the regulated entity's relevant records. For example, holdings in each stock as stated in the statements of account should be checked against the underlying accounting records and stock ledgers, which should be reconciled with custodians' statements and/or physical stock count results with discrepancies properly followed up;
  - e. to improve the number of responses it is advisable to send the confirmation out as close as possible to the date that the regulated entity has sent out its monthly statements;
  - f. the confirmation would be directly sent to and received from clients in the same manner (through regular mail or electronic mail) as the dispatchment of client statements by the regulated entity. Clients would be provided with convenient means of responding to the auditor. For responses received electronically, the auditor shall consider reliability of the responses received;
  - g. the auditor should understand the nature of any client enquiries regarding any discrepancies in their account balances or assets holding and follow up on the resolutions of identified discrepancies;
  - h. where appropriate the auditor should determine appropriate procedures to assess the reliability of the confirmation letters received, such as verifying client signatures on the confirmation against client agreements and/or directly calling the clients to verify the agreed balances on a sample basis;
  - i. where appropriate the auditor should carry out adequate and timely follow-up procedures for the non-reply confirmations of client account balances. Examples of procedures include sending reminders or directly calling the non-reply clients; and
  - j. if the confirmation is not replied, the auditor should obtain sufficient audit evidence from other relevant substantive procedures. Examples of procedures include reviewing subsequent settlement of outstanding balances, reviewing subsequent settlement of margin calls and reviewing trade orders and withdrawals of funds and securities recorded in the client accounts.



### **Subsequent events**

81. In addition to the specific procedures to identify subsequent events which may require amendment to, or disclosure in, the financial statements for the regulated entity, the auditor would review correspondence with the SFC since the financial year end and make enquiries of management to determine whether any breaches of the law, codes and guidelines or other regulatory concerns have come to light since the financial year end.

### **Going concern**

82. In reviewing going concern, the auditor of a regulated entity would consider the following areas since the possible regulatory action of the SFC on the regulated entity is particularly relevant to the going concern assumption:
- a. voluntary undertakings requested by or given to the SFC, new or proposed licensing conditions, regulatory censure or fines;
  - b. regulatory capital shortages;
  - c. visits from the SFC;
  - d. reputation and other indicators (including client complaints);
  - e. general non-compliance with the law, codes and guidelines; and
  - f. unusual movements in the financial markets.
83. If the auditor has any doubts as to the ability of a regulated entity to continue as a going concern, it may be required to make a report to the SFC under their statutory duties on which guidance is set out in Part V of this PN.
84. If the auditor is performing a cessation audit as discussed in paragraphs 127 and 128 below, the auditor may wish to consider whether the financial statements of that entity should be prepared on a going concern or a break-up basis.

### **Written representations**

85. The auditor of a regulated entity would consider obtaining specific representations from management. An example management representation letter is set out in Appendix 3 to this PN.

## **PART III - AUDITOR'S REPORTS UNDER THE SECURITIES AND FUTURES (ACCOUNTS AND AUDIT) RULES**

### **Introduction**

86. This part of the PN is intended to provide a common approach to reporting by the auditor on regulated entities and to establish clear unequivocal wording of the auditor's reports such that a standard form of wording may be used by the auditor when reporting. One benefit of establishing a standard form of report is that it removes any ambiguity as to the assurance obtained from the auditor about compliance with the requirements of the SFO. Example auditor's reports are set out in Appendix 2 to this PN.

### **Management's responsibilities**

87. The auditor's reporting responsibility under the Securities and Futures (Accounts and Audit) Rules addresses matters for which the primary responsibility lies with the management of the regulated entity. The primary responsibilities of management under the Securities and Futures (Accounts and Audit) Rules are, broadly:

- a. to prepare annual financial statements in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles;
- b. to prepare the applicable returns as detailed in section 3(1)(b) or 3(2)(b) (as the case may be) of the Securities and Futures (Accounts and Audit) Rules (for licensed corporations only);
- c. to prepare an Account Disclosure Document which sets out additional financial information (for licensed corporations only);
- d. to prepare Analysis of Client Assets (for associated entities of intermediaries other than those licensed or registered for Type 13 regulated activity in relation to the carrying on by the intermediaries of Type 13 regulated activity);
- e. to prepare Analysis of Scheme Assets (for associated entities of intermediaries licensed or registered for Type 13 regulated activity in relation to the carrying on by the intermediaries of Type 13 regulated activity);
- f. to ensure that the client asset rules and the Securities and Futures (Keeping of Records) Rules are complied with; and
- g. to prepare the Business and Risk Management Questionnaire.

Details are set out in section 3 of the Securities and Futures (Accounts and Audit) Rules.

88. Management should consider the above in their design and maintenance of the systems of control. They should also recognize where appropriate the cost of a particular control, as against its purpose and expected benefit.
89. For the foregoing reasons, different systems and controls may be deemed adequate in different regulated entities, if they provide reasonable assurance that certain control objectives have been achieved. In designing the systems and controls, management would address, inter alia, the following general control objectives:
- a. business is planned and conducted in an orderly, prudent and cost-effective manner in adherence to established and documented policies;

- b. transactions and commitments are entered into only in accordance with management's general or specific authority;
  - c. client assets, or, in relation to an intermediary licensed or registered for Type 13 regulated activity, scheme assets, are safeguarded and are completely and accurately recorded;
  - d. assets are safeguarded and liabilities are controlled;
  - e. the risk of loss from fraud, other irregularities and error is minimized, and any such losses are promptly and readily identified;
  - f. management is able to monitor on a regular and timely basis the regulated entity's business position relative to its risk exposure;
  - g. management is able to prepare complete and accurate returns for the SFC on a timely basis in accordance with the FRR; and
  - h. issues relating to compliance with the law, codes and guidelines are resolved in a timely manner to the satisfaction of the SFC.
90. In designing a control system, management needs to understand the interaction between manual and computer controls and how they contribute in aggregate to the achievement of the control objectives.

### **Auditor's responsibilities and reporting requirements**

91. The auditor's reporting responsibility under the Securities and Futures (Accounts and Audit) Rules is primarily to provide assurance to the SFC on the financial information provided by the regulated entity and on the systems of control operated by the regulated entity during the financial year covered by the report in relation to the regulated entity's stewardship of client assets (including scheme assets where applicable).
92. The precise matters on which the auditor is required to report vary according to the nature of the regulated entity's activities. Under section 4(1) of the Securities and Futures (Accounts and Audit) Rules, the auditor is required to prepare an audit report on the regulated entity's financial statements and a compliance report.
93. The two separate reports mentioned in paragraph 92 above are required to be prepared by the auditor in respect of the year under review. They are required to be submitted by the regulated entity to the SFC within four months of their year end. The auditor should take all reasonable steps for its reports to be issued in order for the regulated entity to submit them to the SFC by the specified date.

#### **The auditor's report on the financial statements**

94. For a regulated entity, the auditor's report contains a true and fair audit opinion and states whether the financial statements are in accordance with the records kept under the Securities and Futures (Keeping of Records) Rules and satisfy the requirements of the Securities and Futures (Accounts and Audit) Rules. An example auditor's report is given in Example 1 of Appendix 2 to this PN.

#### **Compliance report by the auditor**

95. In the auditor's compliance report, the auditor should cover:
- a. in the case of a licensed corporation, whether the required returns made up to the last day of the financial year as detailed in section 3(1)(b) of the Securities and Futures (Accounts and Audit) Rules have been correctly compiled from the records of the licensed corporation or, if not correctly compiled, the nature and extent of the incorrectness;

- b. in so far as applicable, whether the regulated entity had systems of control in place that were adequate to ensure compliance with the SFC's requirements with regard to client assets (including scheme assets) during the financial year in question;
  - c. whether the regulated entity complied with the Securities and Futures (Keeping of Records) Rules during the financial year in question;
  - d. in so far as applicable, whether the regulated entity complied with the client asset rules during the financial year in question; and
  - e. in the case of a licensed corporation, whether there appears to have been any contravention of the FRR by the licensed corporation during the financial year in question.
96. The compliance report setting out the auditor's conclusions on matters set out in paragraph 95 should be addressed to the board of directors of the regulated entity:
- a. For a licensed corporation, an example compliance report is given in Example 2 of Appendix 2 to this PN.
  - b. For an associated entity of an intermediary, an example compliance report is given in Example 3 of Appendix 2 to this PN.

*The assurance standards followed*

97. The auditor would state that the compliance reporting engagement has been conducted in accordance with Hong Kong Standard on Assurance Engagements (HKSAE) 3000 (Revised), *Assurance Engagements Other Audits or Reviews of Historical Financial Information* issued by the HKICPA, and with reference to this PN. It also provides an informative summary of the work performed as the basis for the auditor's conclusion.

*Completion of the work performed and the date of the report*

98. It is highly desirable that the work covered in the compliance report is completed together with the audit of the financial statements. In such case, the compliance report should be dated with the same date as the auditor's report on the financial statements.
99. Further guidance on the reporting requirements of the compliance report are set out in paragraphs 100 to 105 below.

## **Guidance on the reporting requirements of the Compliance Report**

### ***Internal control considerations relating to Securities and Futures (Keeping of Records) Rules and Securities and Futures (Accounts and Audit) Rules***

100. In considering the adequacy of systems of control required to ensure compliance with the client asset rules and the Securities and Futures (Keeping of Records) Rules, the auditor must recognize the inherent limitations of such systems. These limitations mean that, despite the existence of controls, errors or irregularities may occur and may not be detected. Also, projection of any evaluation of the systems to future periods is subject to the risk that management information and control procedures may become inadequate because of changes in conditions or the risk that the degree of compliance with those procedures may deteriorate.
101. The auditor is required to report whether the regulated entity has satisfied the requirements of the Securities and Futures (Keeping of Records) Rules during the financial year under review. In order to report on whether the regulated entity has satisfied the requirements of these rules it is envisaged that consideration will be given to whether adequate systems for control of the regulated entity's accounting systems have been maintained.
102. The Securities and Futures (Keeping of Records) Rules set out the basic characteristics of adequate accounting records in general and include requirements on the contents of specialized

accounting records, especially those concerned with client assets (including scheme assets). Management, in establishing and maintaining accounting records, and the auditor, in forming a view as to whether adequate records have been kept, will need to refer to the detailed rules relevant to the particular regulated activities.

103. The Securities and Futures (Keeping of Records) Rules require that regulated entities shall in relation to the businesses which constitute any regulated activities for which they are licensed and their associated entities as regards the receipt or holding of client assets (including scheme assets) in relation to such regulated activities, to keep, where applicable, such accounting, trading and other records as are sufficient to:

*For a licensed corporation*

- a. explain, and reflect the financial position and operation of, such businesses;
- b. enable statements of profit or loss and other comprehensive income and statements of financial position<sup>5</sup> that give a true and fair view of its financial affairs to be prepared from time to time;
- c. account for all client assets that it receives or holds or, in the case of a licensed corporation licensed for Type 13 regulated activity, account for all relevant CIS property in respect of each relevant CIS for which it provides depositary services for Type 13 regulated activity;
- d. enable all movements of such client assets to be traced through its accounting systems and, where applicable, stock holding systems, or in the case of a licensed corporation licensed for Type 13 regulated activity, enable all movement of such relevant CIS property to be traced through its accounting systems and, where applicable, holding systems for relevant CIS property;
- e. reconcile, on a monthly basis, any differences in its balances or positions with other persons and show how such differences were resolved;
- f. demonstrate compliance with certain sections of the client asset rules and that it has systems of control in place to ensure such compliance;
- g. enable it readily to establish whether it has complied with the FRR; and
- h. for all licensed corporations other than those only licensed for Type 13 regulated activity, keep records specified in Schedule 1 and sections 5, 6, 7(2) or 8 of the Securities and Futures (Keeping of Records) Rules. In the case of a licensed corporation licensed for Type 13 regulated activity, keep records specified in Schedule 2 of the Securities and Futures (Keeping of Records) Rules. Records include all orders or instructions received or initiated (where applicable) by the licensed corporation, regardless if the order or instruction is executed or not.

*For an associated entity*

- a. account for the client assets or, for an associated entity of an intermediary in relation to the conduct by the intermediary of Type 13 regulated activity, scheme assets;
- b. enable all movements of the client assets to be traced through its accounting systems and, where applicable, stock holding systems, or in the case of an associated entity of an intermediary in relation to the conduct by the intermediary of Type 13 regulated activity, enable all movement of such scheme assets to be traced through its accounting systems and, where applicable, holding systems for scheme securities;
- c. show separately and account for all receipts, payments, deliveries and other uses or applications of the client assets or, for an associated entity of an intermediary in relation to the conduct by the intermediary of Type 13 regulated activity, scheme assets effected by it,

---

<sup>5</sup> Different terms such as income statement, statement of comprehensive income, etc may be used in the auditor's report as long as they are consistent with the titles of the corresponding statements.

or on its behalf, and on whose behalf such receipts, payments, deliveries or other uses or applications of the client assets or, for an associated entity of an intermediary in relation to the conduct by the intermediary of Type 13 regulated activity, scheme assets have been effected;

- d. reconcile, on a monthly basis, any differences in its balances or positions with other persons and show how such differences were resolved;
  - e. demonstrate compliance with certain sections of the client asset rules and that it has systems of control in place to ensure such compliance; and
  - f. keep certain specific records where applicable.
104. These records would be kept in such a manner as will enable an audit to be conveniently and properly carried out, and make entries in these records in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles where applicable. There are also particular requirements, over and above those outlined above, for licensed corporations involved in certain regulated activities.
105. Detailed guidance on the control objectives and audit evidence in relation to the auditor's reporting requirements with regard to client assets (including scheme assets) under the Securities and Futures (Accounts and Audit) Rules are included in Appendix 1 to this PN. The auditor will need to apply judgment in determining the extent and nature of its work which would be based on a good understanding of the regulated entity's systems of control.

***Securities and Futures (Financial Resources) Rules***

106. The assessments of materiality and performance materiality for the financial statements of a regulated entity will require an auditor to make the same professional judgment decisions as on any audit. However, the auditor would remember that in respect of the compliance report there is no materiality concept outlined in the Securities and Futures (Accounts and Audit) Rules and therefore if the auditor becomes aware of any reportable matter then that should be reported in the compliance report.
107. A licensed corporation is required to submit to the SFC the following financial returns (as appropriate) as referred to in section 3(1)(b) of the Securities and Futures (Accounts and Audit) Rules made up to the last day of the financial year:
- a. Liquid capital computation (Form 1);
  - b. Required liquid capital computation (Form 2);
  - c. Summary of bank loans, advances and other credit facilities (Form 3);
  - d. Analysis of margin clients (Form 4);
  - e. Analysis of collateral received from margin clients (Form 5);
  - f. Analysis of rolling balance cash clients (Form 6);
  - g. Analysis of client assets where it is not licensed for Type 13 regulated activity (Form 8);
  - h. Analysis of relevant CIS property received or held by it for any relevant CIS arising from the carrying on of Type 13 regulated activity (Form 8A); and
  - i. Analysis of proprietary derivative positions (Form 10).

The auditor is suggested to perform the following procedures on the final revised and resubmitted financial returns as referred to in section 3(1)(b) of the Securities and Futures (Accounts and Audit) Rules made up to year end date:

- Check whether the financial returns are prepared from the licensed corporation's books and records which are prepared in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles;
  - Check whether each of the items reported in the financial returns is prepared in accordance with the FRR;
  - Check whether the financial returns are mathematically accurate; and
  - Check whether all adjustments made after the first submitted financial returns are appropriately incorporated into the revised financial returns.
108. There is a requirement in the compliance report to state whether the auditor is aware of any instances where the licensed corporation has contravened the FRR during the year. However, the auditor is not required to perform any procedures to search for instances of contravention of the FRR. The work of auditor was limited to reporting contraventions identified during the normal course of audit. If the licensed corporation has a very low excess liquid capital or is prone to material computational or classification errors this may lead to the auditor deciding to review and test a larger sample of FRR throughout the year. Those material errors may also need to be reported as a breach.
109. The auditor is required to give an opinion as to whether the financial returns referred to in paragraph 107 above which have been submitted to the SFC have been correctly compiled from the records of the licensed corporation, or if not correctly compiled, the nature and extent of the incorrectness. This involves the auditor in examining the licensed corporation's compilations by reference to the FRR, paying particular attention to those areas most susceptible to management's discretion. Particular care will be exercised in cases where the licensed corporation is operating at a level close to the minimum requirement, since any shortfall (however small) is a contravention of the FRR and results in a higher possibility of window dressing. The auditor would note that the Securities and Futures (Accounts and Audit) Rules do not provide that immaterial discrepancies or reclassifications can be disregarded. Accordingly, the auditor qualifies its opinion where discrepancies and reclassifications are identified in the financial returns regardless of materiality.
110. If the auditor qualifies its compliance report in respect of the financial returns, the auditor either provides the reconciliations or explains the differences. The reconciliations or explained differences are attached to the compliance report.
111. In particular the auditor would check that the reconciliation agrees back to supporting documentation and that the explanations given for any reconciling items are reasonable. Reconciling items commonly relate to audit adjustments made after the first submitted financial returns.
112. It is common for a licensed corporation to submit revised financial returns if errors are noted following the original submission in order to avoid a qualified compliance report. An auditor should ensure that the financial returns the auditor is commenting on in the compliance report is clearly identified and this should be the latest financial returns submitted to the SFC prior to the date of the compliance report. In such case the auditor may include a reconciliation to report discrepancies between the audited financial returns and the first submitted financial returns in the Audit Questionnaire.

***Securities and Futures (Client Securities) Rules and Securities and Futures (Client Money) Rules***

113. There are two aspects to the auditor's reporting responsibilities for client assets (including scheme assets where applicable):
- a. whether during the financial year under review, the regulated entity had systems of control in place that were adequate to enable compliance with the relevant sections of the client asset rules; and
  - b. whether during the financial year under review, the regulated entity complied with the relevant sections of the client asset rules.

114. Guidance on the control objectives and audit evidence is set out in Appendix 1 to this PN. The auditor applies judgment in determining the extent and nature of its work which is based on the following general requirements:
- a. the auditor understands the business of the regulated entity and the environment in which the regulated entity operates;
  - b. the auditor reviews the regulated entity's systems and consider whether these are adequate for control and accounting purposes, and are in accordance with the requirements set out in the Control Techniques for Client Asset Rules; and
  - c. the auditor tests those systems and controls to establish that they are operating effectively.
115. As outlined above, the auditor's work on client assets (including scheme assets) will be planned in relation to following reporting requirements:
- a. For client securities and scheme securities, the main areas that need to be addressed by the auditor, to enable it to fulfill its reporting requirements, are:
    - i. whether during the financial year under review, the regulated entity had adequate systems of control in place to ensure compliance with the sections [4(4), 5, 10(1)]<sup>6</sup>, [9B, 10A(1)]<sup>7</sup> and 12 of the Client Securities Rules;
    - ii. whether during the financial year under review, the regulated entity has complied with sections [4(4), 5, 10(1)]<sup>6</sup>, [9B, 10A(1)]<sup>7</sup> and 12 of the Client Securities Rules; and
    - iii. whether during the financial year under review, the regulated entity has complied with sections [3, 4]<sup>6</sup>, [3A or 4A]<sup>7</sup> of the Keeping of Records Rules to the extent that they relate to client securities, relevant CIS property and scheme securities, where applicable.
  - b. For client money and scheme money, the main areas that need to be addressed by the auditor, to enable it to fulfil its reporting requirements are:
    - i. whether during the financial year under review, the associated entity of an intermediary or licensed corporation had systems of control in place that were adequate to ensure compliance with sections [4, 5, 6, 8(4), 10]<sup>6</sup>, [10B, 10C, 10D]<sup>7</sup> and 11 of the Client Money Rules, where applicable;
    - ii. whether during the financial year under review, the regulated entity has complied with sections [4, 5, 6, 8(4), 10]<sup>6</sup>, [10B, 10C, 10D]<sup>7</sup> and 11 of the Client Money Rules; and
    - iii. whether during the financial year under review, the regulated entity has complied with sections [3, 4]<sup>6</sup>, [3A or 4A]<sup>7</sup> of the Keeping of Records Rules to the extent that they relate to client money, relevant CIS property and scheme money, where applicable.
116. The control objectives that a regulated entity administering or holding client assets (including scheme assets where applicable), client securities collateral and relevant CIS property will need to meet and the evidence that may be available to the auditor upon which it can base its conclusions are outlined in Appendix 1 to this PN. They are only indicative and will not be applicable to all regulated entities holding client assets (including scheme assets where applicable), especially smaller ones.
117. When planning and carrying out its work, the auditor must always keep in mind the need for audit evidence in relation to the existence of client assets (including scheme assets) and the accuracy of the regulated entity's records.

<sup>6</sup> Applicable to licensed corporations or associated entities of intermediaries other than in conduct of Type 13 regulated activity.

<sup>7</sup> Applicable to licensed corporations in conduct of Type 13 regulated activity or associated entities of intermediaries in conduct of Type 13 regulated activity. As it relates to associated entities of intermediaries in conduct of Type 13 regulated activity, section 4A of the Keeping of Records Rules cover only scheme assets (i.e. scheme money and scheme securities). For licensed corporations in conduct of Type 13 regulated activity, refer to footnote 1 for the scope covered under section 3A of the Keeping of Records Rules.



118. Certain licensed corporations do not receive or hold client money or client securities either by choice or by limitation of their licensing condition. It would therefore not normally be necessary for the auditor to make reference to the client asset rules in the compliance report. However, the auditor would ensure that such licensed corporations have procedures in place to avoid receipt or holding of client assets. If during the course of the performance of these procedures (as set out in paragraphs 88 - 90 of Appendix 1 to this PN) it comes to the auditor's attention that the licensed corporation has held client assets, it would be necessary for the auditor to make reference to the licensed corporation's compliance with the client asset rules in the compliance report.<sup>6</sup>

***Qualified Compliance Reports***

119. The auditor may qualify its compliance report on grounds other than those which arise in reporting on whether the financial statements give a true and fair view. Where the requirements of the rules upon which the auditor must report have not been met, its report includes a statement specifying the relevant requirements and the respect in which they have not been met, in sufficient detail for the breach or shortcoming to be clearly understood and evaluated. In particular, where the breach relates to a specific rule, the rule number or reference will be stated in the compliance report.
120. In considering any matter indicating a possible breach of the FRR, client asset rules and the Securities and Futures (Keeping of Records) Rules or inadequate systems of control over client assets or scheme assets for a licensed corporation licensed for Type 13 regulated activity, the auditor analyzes the circumstances in order to identify its cause, and establish the action management has taken or intends to take to correct the matter.
121. If the auditor proposes to include any qualification or adverse statement in the compliance report (or its report on the financial statements), the form and content of the report should comply with the requirements of HKSAE 3000 (Revised). Section 157(1)(b) of the SFO, requires the auditor, as soon as reasonably practicable after it first proposes the inclusion of the qualification or adverse statement, to lodge with the SFC a report. Details are set out in Part V of this PN.
122. The Securities and Futures (Accounts and Audit) Rules do not provide that trivial breaches can be disregarded. Where small exceptions are discovered, the auditor will need to qualify its opinion, although references can be made to the extent of the breach.

## **PART IV - OTHER REPORTING CONSIDERATIONS**

### **Audit Questionnaire**

123. In order to assist the SFC to carry out its functions of supervising licensed corporations, the auditor would normally on a voluntary basis complete an Audit Questionnaire for submission to the SFC, providing information in relation to the completed audit that is not readily available from the audited financial statements.
124. Section 158 of the SFO allows the auditor to provide such information to the SFC without the breaching of any duty of confidentiality to the licensed corporations.
125. The auditor would complete the Audit Questionnaire based on information obtained during the course of its audit of the financial statements covered by the Audit Questionnaire. The SFC does not expect the auditor to extend the scope of its work in order to complete the Audit Questionnaire.

### **Account Disclosure Document**

126. The SFC has issued the Account Disclosure Document for Licensed Corporation which sets out additional financial information to be disclosed by licensed corporations. In the Audit Questionnaire the auditor is requested by the SFC to state whether the auditor is satisfied that no material inconsistency between the audited financial statements and the additional disclosure of financial information as required by the Account Disclosure Document for Licensed Corporation came to its attention. If the auditor is aware of any material inconsistencies, the auditor states details of such inconsistencies in the Audit Questionnaire.

### **Cessation of Activities**

127. Where a licensed corporation ceases to carry on all of the regulated activities for which it is licensed, or where an associated entity of an intermediary ceases to be such an associated entity, they are required to submit to the SFC certain documents, including the audited financial statements made up to the date of cessation together with the corresponding auditor reports.
128. The responsibilities of the auditor and the reporting requirements in those audits are generally the same as those discussed in "Part III – Auditor's Reports under the Securities and Futures (Accounts and Audit) Rules".

## **PART V - COMMUNICATIONS BETWEEN THE AUDITOR AND THE SECURITIES AND FUTURES COMMISSION**

### **Introduction**

129. This part of the PN is concerned with communications:
- a. by the auditor to the SFC under the obligations established in section 157 of the SFO;
  - b. by the auditor to the SFC under the protection of section 158 of the SFO; and
  - c. by the SFC to the auditor under section 378(3)(h) of the SFO.

It is also concerned with the related issue of auditor's duty of secrecy under the SFO.

130. Because of the variety of conditions which might be encountered, the guidance in this Part of the PN is necessarily set out only in general terms; the specific actions to be taken in a particular case may vary somewhat in the light of the circumstances. The auditor would be well advised to consult with its lawyers when it encounters such circumstances.
131. Under the SFO the auditor has various statutory responsibilities to report to the SFC. The auditor is automatically protected in making a report in discharge of such a statutory responsibility. Certain provisions of the SFO also provide the auditor with immunity from any liability it might otherwise incur by reason of the auditor making other reports to the SFC which it may consider to be relevant to the functions of the SFC. These responsibilities and avenues available for reporting do not require the auditor to change the scope of its audit work, nor the frequency or timing of its visits.
132. When the circumstances where reporting may be appropriate are being considered, it should be noted that investments in financial markets carry inherent risks. It is not the purpose of the SFO, nor the duty of the auditor, to protect the investors from the normal risks relating to such investment activities.
133. The auditor needs to bear in mind that its decision may have to stand up to examination at a future date on the basis of the following considerations:
- a. what it knew at the time;
  - b. what it should have known in the course of its audit;
  - c. what it should have concluded; and
  - d. what it should have done.

The auditor should report to the SFC under section 157 of the SFO promptly and not postpone reporting the breaches until the issuance of the audit report or the compliance report. In addition, taking into account the factors raised above, the auditor should report under section 157 of the SFO in sufficient detail to enable the SFC to understand the nature and circumstances of the situation.

### **The auditor to lodge report with the SFC in certain cases**

#### **Sections 157(1)(b) and 157(2) of the SFO**

134. The auditor has a statutory duty to lodge a report with the SFC in the following circumstances:
- a. if it decides to include in its audit report any qualification or adverse statement (SFO section 157(1)(b)). Such a written report is required to be lodged with the SFC as soon as

reasonably practicable after the auditor first proposes the inclusion of the qualification or adverse statement; and

- b. if it resigns before the expiration of its term of office, intends not to seek re-appointment or otherwise cease to be the auditor (SFO section 157(2)). Such a notice in writing to notify the SFC is required within one business day of the event, outlining the reasons and any connected circumstances which the auditor considers should be brought to the attention of the SFC or state the fact where there are no such circumstances.

**Section 157(1)(a) of the SFO**

- 135. Section 157(1)(a) of the SFO provides that the auditor shall lodge a written report with the SFC, as soon as reasonably practicable after it becomes aware of any “reportable matter”. A reportable matter is defined in section 157(3) of the SFO as:
  - a. any matter which in the auditor’s opinion adversely affects the financial position of the regulated entity to a material extent; or
  - b. a failure of the regulated entity to comply with any rules made under section 148, 149 or 151 of the SFO or a failure of the licensed corporation to comply with section 146 of the SFO or with any of the requirements of the FRR that apply to it.
- 136. These are statutory obligations and this Part of the PN provides the auditor with procedures to follow when such circumstances arise.
- 137. Section 157(3) of the SFO includes a failure by the regulated entity to comply with any “prescribed requirement” as a “reportable matter”. In addition to the requirements under any of the rules made under sections 148, 149 and 151 of the SFO, it also refers to the requirements under any of the rules made under section 152 of the SFO (provision of contract notes, receipts, statements of account and notifications by intermediaries and their associated entities). It should be noted that the requirements under any of the rules made under section 152 of the SFO are not included as “matters reportable by the auditor under section 157 of the SFO” in section 5 of the Securities and Futures (Accounts and Audit) Rules and therefore the auditor is not required to report to the SFC if there is a failure of the regulated entity to comply with section 152 of the SFO.

*Reporting criterion under section 157(1)(a) of the SFO*

- 138. The auditor would take the initiative and ensure that a written report on the reportable matter under section 157(1)(a) of the SFO is lodged with the SFC if the conditions specified in paragraph 135 above exist. A distinction must be drawn here between an auditor’s duty as stated in paragraph 135(a) and paragraph 135(b) above. The duty under paragraph 135(b) is clear and unequivocal: if the auditor becomes aware of a contravention of the requirements which are specified, it is not given any latitude for exercising judgment. The auditor is obliged to make a report. The duty under paragraph 135(a) is different. The auditor is given the right to form an opinion based on applying criteria as to the materiality of an adverse effect on the regulated entity’s financial position in deciding whether reporting would be appropriate.
- 139. The HKICPA has developed a criterion for use by the auditor in deciding to take the initiative in lodging a written report with the SFC under paragraph 135(a) above. The criterion is that the auditor would lodge a written report with the SFC when it considers it expedient to do so in order for the SFC to protect the interests of investors because there has been a material loss or there exists a significant risk of material loss.
- 140. This criterion can be more fully explained as follows:
  - a. there must be a significant adverse occurrence or a change in the auditor’s perception of an existing situation, that may include an adverse change in the circumstances of the business; and

- b. the situation described in (a) above has given rise to or has indicated that a reasonable probability exists that it may give rise to:
    - i. a material financial loss to the business which would result in a material deterioration of the licensed corporation's liquid capital position under the FRR; or
    - ii. loss of control over the assets or records.
141. Examples of the circumstances encountered in which the situation set out in paragraphs 139 and 140 may be met include:
- a. the auditor discovers a failure by the regulated entity to comply with the provisions of the SFO which may have material consequences; or
  - b. there is evidence of imminent financial loss of serious proportions which might cast doubt on the continuing viability of the regulated entity.

*Reporting procedures under section 157(1)(a) of the SFO*

142. In circumstances where the auditor concludes that a written report under section 157(1)(a) of the SFO to the SFC is necessary, it would adopt the following procedures, bearing in mind that speed may be of the essence:
- a. The auditor would discuss the matter with the regulated entity (unless the matter relates to suspected or actual instance of fraud and serious misconduct by the management itself) and explain the auditor's statutory duty to lodge a written report with the SFC under section 157(1)(a) of the SFO and that it might be advisable for the regulated entity to make a report direct to the SFC immediately.
  - b. The auditor would then immediately lodge a written report with the SFC. The auditor would follow this with a written notification along with a copy of its report to the directors or management to inform them.
143. The auditor would note that lodging a written report with the SFC alone may not discharge all its responsibilities. For example, the auditor would consider the implications of the matter giving rise to the report under section 157(1)(a) of the SFO for its opinion on the financial statements, and its conclusions in the compliance report.

## **Other communications by the auditor**

### **Statutory protection under section 158 of the SFO**

144. Section 158 (1) of the SFO provides that:
- "... no duty which a person may be subject to as an auditor ... shall be regarded as contravened by reason of his communicating in good faith to the Commission ..., whether or not in response to a request made by the Commission ..., any information or opinion on a matter which (a) he becomes aware of in his capacity as such auditor (whether or not in the course of performing his functions as such auditor); and (b) is relevant to any function of the Commission ...".
145. Section 158 of the SFO only gives immunity for the auditor appointed under section 153 of the SFO. It does not cover appointments under section 159 or 160 of the SFO which give the power of appointment to the SFC. However it does extend the immunity to:
- a. an auditor who has ceased to be the auditor but became aware of a matter before his appointment ceased (SFO section 158(2)(a));
  - b. an auditor appointed by a former regulated entity (SFO section 158(2)(b)); and

- c. an auditor who has ceased to be the auditor of a former regulated entity before his appointment ceased (SFO section 158(2)(c)).
146. Section 158 of the SFO does not lay down any rules nor specify the circumstances in which the auditor is to communicate any matter to the SFC. They provide a mechanism whereby the auditor may make matters known to the SFC with statutory protection from its duty of confidentiality.
147. This Part of the PN contains guidance on the circumstances in which matters may be brought to the attention of the SFC by way of a report with statutory protection which falls outside those matters which the auditor is obliged to report (see paragraphs 134 to 143 above). In interpreting this guidance, the auditor would bear in mind the fundamental objectives of the SFO, which are to ensure that the SFC is able to fulfil its function of safeguarding the interests of investors. The auditor would have regard to any function of the SFC as summarized in section 5 of the SFO.
148. Confidentiality is an implied term of auditor's contract with its client, but in certain circumstances and under conditions specified in section 158 of the SFO it does not prevail, since the auditor of a regulated entity is entitled to communicate in good faith to the SFC information or opinion on a matter which it becomes aware of in its capacity as the auditor of the regulated entity and is relevant to any function of the SFC, without the duty of confidentiality owed to the client being regarded as having been contravened.
149. The matters which may be communicated under section 158 of the SFO depend on the functions of the SFC. Any matters relevant to any of its functions under the SFO may be communicated to the SFC.
150. Matters which may be reported under the protection of section 158 of the SFO will only arise in circumstances other than where the auditor is under a statutory duty to report under section 157 of the SFO. Considerable care needs to be taken in disclosing matters arising during any tripartite meeting with the SFC as the auditor's knowledge of these matters may have been obtained while assisting the SFC rather than in its capacity as the auditor (see paragraph 154 below).
151. Examples of circumstances in which the auditor may communicate any matter to the SFC under section 158 of the SFO include:
- a. the auditor considers investors have incurred, or are at significant risk of incurring, a material loss as a result of the regulated entity carrying on business in a manner that is not fit and proper;
  - b. there is evidence of:
    - i. fraud, dishonesty or serious incompetence; or
    - ii. serious failure to observe rules for the conduct of the regulated entity;
  - c. it has come to the attention of the auditor that the procedures, records or systems fail significantly to comply with, or to demonstrate compliance with, conduct of business requirements to which the regulated entity is subject (except in respect of client assets (including scheme assets where applicable) which are covered in section 157 of the SFO); and
  - d. the position is such that because of a significant risk which is material to the collective interests of investors, the investors' interests would be better safeguarded if the SFC were aware of the position, even if only to organize protective action.
152. Clearly the potential nature of matters which may be reported is very wide, but as explained in paragraph 155 below this does not, of itself, require the auditor to extend the scope of its work in order to discover matters and it will only be in exceptional circumstances such as those described in paragraphs 165 and 166 that it may choose to seek statutory protection.

153. Any protected communication can be made either on the auditor's initiative or in response to a request from the SFC for information. The auditor would cooperate with the SFC and respond to any requests from the SFC for information, provided it has no reason to doubt that the request is relevant to the SFC's functions. The auditor may communicate a matter to the SFC with the protection of section 158 of the SFO regardless of the source of that information, provided it became aware of the matter in its capacity as the auditor of the regulated entity and it does so in good faith.
154. Matters of which the auditor becomes aware "in its capacity as the auditor" may not be restricted to those matters identified during the course of the audit work by the auditor and members of the audit team. The auditor or members of the audit team may become aware of a matter which is relevant to the functions of the SFC during the course of its carrying out work for the regulated entity other than audit work or through private discussions on social or other occasions, in which case the information will be known to them as individuals. In circumstances which suggest that a matter would be reported to the SFC if knowledge of it had been obtained in the capacity as the auditor, it would be prudent to make enquiries in the course of the audit work in order to establish whether this is the case from information obtained in this capacity. In addition, a matter which is relevant to the functions of the SFC and which is identified during the course of work for the regulated entity by another partner (or member of staff) such as a management consultant or tax partner may be deemed to be known to the auditor (see also paragraph 155 below).
155. The auditor cannot be expected to be aware of all circumstances which, had it known of them, would have led them to exercise its right to communicate under section 158 of the SFO. This section does not require the auditor to change the scope of its audit or other work for the regulated entity, nor the frequency or timing of its visits. The auditor has no obligation to seek out grounds for making a report under section 158 of the SFO, the section does not place an obligation on the auditor to conduct its work in such a way that there is reasonable certainty that it will discover a matter upon which the SFC may need to act. It is only when the auditor does become aware in the ordinary course of this work of such a matter, or of circumstances which suggest the existence of such a matter, that it would consider using the protection of section 158 of the SFO.
156. The SFC recognizes that it would not be appropriate for the auditor to report information which it has obtained or matters which it has identified through its professional relationship with another client, even though the information obtained or the matters identified may relate to a regulated entity.
157. The auditor would need to realize that section 158 of the SFO will not provide protection where it could be held to have acted maliciously or in bad faith or if the information reported is outside the scope of the section. The SFO does not, therefore, provide complete immunity from all types of legal action by all parties affected, or subsequently affected, by their action in reporting to the SFC. The auditor would consider taking legal or other professional advice before making the decision whether or in what manner to report and in order, for example, to ensure that the form and content of its report are such as to secure the protection of section 158 of the SFO and that it only includes relevant material.
158. The auditor is protected, however, even if the information which it communicates subsequently falls short of proof, or the opinion which it communicates cannot be verified. The auditor who can demonstrate that it has acted reasonably and in good faith in informing the SFC of any information or opinion on a matter which it thinks has occurred would not be held in breach of duty to its client even if, after an investigation, it was found there was not a matter which needed to be reported. These are areas where the auditor may wish to consider taking legal advice before making a report.
159. Whilst no breach of statutory duty might arise, it should be appreciated that there is no protection given by the SFO if the auditor, after becoming aware of an occurrence, fails to report, promptly, or at all, to the SFC. Furthermore, the auditor would need to recognize that speed of reporting is likely to be important in order to enable the SFC to protect the interests of investors.

### **Tripartite meetings**

160. As part of the SFC's system of supervision of regulated entities, meetings involving the SFC, the regulated entity and its auditor may be called by either the SFC, or the regulated entity possibly at the auditor's suggestion.
161. In such meeting, the auditor would be expected to discuss with the SFC the affairs of the regulated entity including:
- a. the presentation and content of the financial statements;
  - b. the scope, conduct and outcome of the annual audit;
  - c. the scope, conduct and outcome of any report under section 158 of the SFO;
  - d. any points raised in the management letter which relate to the SFO;
  - e. explanations for, the reason for and nature of a qualified auditor's report or of a change in a previously reported intention to qualify an auditor's report;
  - f. any step or course of action which may be necessary in the light of the reports, for example, the commissioning of a more detailed report in a particular area (under section 159 or 160 of the SFO); and
  - g. matters raised by the SFC or those which the regulated entity or the auditor have drawn to its attention since any previous meeting, including how such matters have been resolved to the satisfaction of the auditor or have been reflected or treated in the financial statements.

### **Reporting via the regulated entity**

162. Where the auditor becomes aware of a matter which, in its professional judgment, it considers is not required to be reported under section 157 of the SFO but ought to be reported to the SFC, it would consider the facts and, unless inappropriate in the circumstances (described in paragraph 165 below), discuss the matter with the management.
163. It is important for the auditor to act in a manner that will maintain its professional relationship with its client. Normally, therefore, the auditor would ask the regulated entity to draw matters about which it is concerned to the attention of the SFC.
164. Where the regulated entity will not itself inform the SFC of a matter, having been advised to do so by the auditor, or where it has not been done within the period of time specified, or where there is no adequate evidence that the client has properly reported the matter in question, the auditor would make such a report direct to the SFC.

### **Reporting direct to the SFC**

165. In exceptional circumstances, where the auditor doubts whether management is fit and proper person to carry on business as a regulated entity and it would be in the interest of protecting investors that the management of the regulated entity would not be informed in advance, the auditor would report direct to the SFC after first considering the appropriateness of taking independent legal advice. Examples of these circumstances include:
- a. where there has been an occurrence which causes the auditor no longer to have confidence in the integrity of the directors or senior management, e.g. where it believes that a fraud or other irregularity has been committed by the directors or senior management of the regulated entity, or it has evidence of the intention of directors or senior management to commit such a fraud or other irregularity; or
  - b. where there has been an occurrence which causes the auditor no longer to have confidence that the directors or senior management will conduct the business of the regulated entity in



a prudent manner so as to protect the interests of investors, e.g. where it has discovered that the directors or senior management are acting in an irresponsible or reckless manner with respect to the affairs of the business or its clients, or it has evidence of their inclination so to act.

166. The auditor would also report direct to the SFC when speed is of the essence. For example, when it becomes aware that the regulated entity may be about to cease being licensed, the auditor would consider the need to disclose to the SFC any information in its possession relevant to its functions without delay. The fact of such impending cessation of licence may bring forward the desirability of disclosing matters to the SFC, as it is easier for the SFC to take appropriate action while the entity is still licensed, particularly where such matters bear on the security of third party interests.

### **The auditor's duty of secrecy**

167. Section 378 of the SFO imposes a duty of secrecy upon any "specified person", within the meaning of that term in section 378(15). The auditor is bound by the duty of secrecy once it performs any function under or carries into effect any of the provisions of the SFO or assists another person in the performance of any function under or in carrying into effect any such provisions.
168. The precise scope of an auditor's statutory duty of secrecy is not definitive but is likely to include:
- a. any matter which, in the auditor's opinion, adversely affects the financial position of the regulated entity to a material extent and which is the subject of a written report by the auditor to the SFC (SFO section 157(1)(a)) and the contents of that written report;
  - b. any evidence of the regulated entity's failure to comply with any rules made under section 148, 149 or 151 of the SFO, or any evidence of the licensed corporation's failure to comply with section 146 of the SFO or with any of the requirements of the FRR that apply to it, which is the subject of a written report by the auditor to the SFC (SFO section 157(1)(a)) and the contents of that written report;
  - c. the auditor's decision to resign before the expiration of its term of office, the auditor's decision not to seek re-appointment, or if the auditor otherwise ceases to be the auditor, and any reason for such decision which is communicated to the SFC under section 157(2) of the SFO;
  - d. any reason for including any qualification or adverse statement in the auditor's report on the regulated entity's financial statements (SFO section 157(1)(b)) which is communicated to the SFC to the extent that such reason is not self-evident from the contents of the report itself;
  - e. any communication by the auditor to the SFC under section 158 of the SFO, which is a communication of information or opinion on a matter which is relevant to any function of the SFC of which it becomes aware in its capacity as the auditor, whether or not it is at the time of such communication still the auditor of the regulated entity concerned; and
  - f. any communication by the SFC to the auditor under section 378(3)(h) of the SFO (see paragraphs 173 - 175 below).
169. Application of section 378 of the SFO would therefore prevent the auditor from communicating any matters such as those referred to in paragraph 168 above to any parties other than the SFC except under certain circumstances as discussed in paragraphs 170 and 171 below in relation to the matters mentioned in paragraph 168(c) above. It should be emphasised that application of section 378 of the SFO would also prevent the auditor from communicating information that is subject to the duty of secrecy to the regulated entity concerned except for information which the regulated entity already knows.

170. Section 417 of the Companies Ordinance states that a person may resign from the office of auditor by giving the company a notice in writing that is accompanied by a statement required to be given under section 424. Section 424 states that a person who resigns from office must on the resignation, give the company (a) if the person considers that there are circumstances connected with the resignation that should be brought to the attention of the company's members or creditors, a statement of those circumstances; or (b) if the person considers that there are no such circumstances, a statement to that effect. Section 425(1) requires the same statement to be given where the auditor retires or is removed from office except for the conditions as stated in 425(3). Thus, the incoming auditor and members or creditors of a regulated entity may be informed by the outgoing auditor regarding its reasons to resign, not to seek re-appointment or otherwise cease to be the auditor. Disclosure of such information by the outgoing auditor of a regulated entity under the provisions of the Companies Ordinance is permitted under section 378(2)(e) of the SFO without breaching the duty of secrecy under section 378 of the SFO since the disclosure is made in accordance with a law.
171. In complying with a request by the incoming auditor to provide professional clearance which is required under HKICPA Code of Ethics for Professional Accountants, the outgoing auditor may communicate the matters referred to in paragraph 168(c) to the incoming auditor. The outgoing auditor is considered to be doing this for the purposes of carrying into effect the provisions of section 153 of the SFO in order that the incoming auditor can accept nomination as the auditor of the regulated entity under section 153 of the SFO.
172. Under this PN, the auditor would prepare two auditor's reports separately in respect of reporting on the financial statements (see paragraph 94 above) and compliance reporting (see paragraphs 95-96 above). Since the compliance report by the auditor is for filing with the SFC only and should not be made available to any other parties including the shareholders of the regulated entity, the auditor can disclose any contraventions by the regulated entity of the requirements referred to in paragraph 168(b) in the compliance report without breaching the duty of secrecy under section 378 of the SFO.

### **Communications by the SFC to the auditor under section 378(3)(h) of the SFO**

173. Section 378(3)(h) of the SFO empowers the SFC to disclose confidential information to the auditor of regulated entities for the purpose of enabling or assisting the SFC to perform its functions under the SFO without the consent of the person from whom it is received or to whom it relates. It should be noted that disclosure by the SFC of confidential information to the auditor is to the auditor only; it is not free to pass that information to others, such as the regulated entity in question without the consent in writing of the SFC.
174. The SFC will generally take the initiative in bringing a matter to the attention of the auditor of a regulated entity under the provisions of section 378(3)(h) of the SFO if it considers disclosure is necessary to enable or assist the SFC to perform its functions under the SFO. Where the SFC discloses confidential information to the auditor under section 378(3)(h) of the SFO, it will generally inform the auditor whether it has informed the regulated entity's management of the matter and, if so, whom.
175. If the auditor is not informed by the SFC of any such matter, it is entitled to assume that the SFC has no such disclosure to make. Accordingly, there is no need for the auditor to request the SFC to confirm this.

## APPENDIX 1 - CLIENT ASSETS

### INTRODUCTION

1. This Appendix provides more detailed guidance to the auditor on the work normally carried out in order to form an opinion on client assets (including scheme assets where applicable) in the auditor's reporting under the SFO. It provides guidance on the following rules:
  - a. Securities and Futures (Client Securities) Rules (Client Securities Rules);
  - b. Securities and Futures (Client Money) Rules (Client Money Rules);
  - c. Securities and Futures (Keeping of Records) Rules (Keeping of Records Rules); and
  - d. Securities and Futures (Accounts and Audit) Rules.

For the purpose of this Appendix the term "rules" means any of the above applicable rules.

2. The main purpose of the rules in relation to client assets (including scheme assets) is to ensure that the regulated entity safeguards client assets (including scheme assets where applicable). A further purpose is to ensure that, in the event of insolvency of the regulated entity, client assets are protected from the claims of its general creditors and, in the case of client money, from any right of set off by institutions which hold the money.
3. The rules require a regulated entity to maintain a high standard of custodianship and associated record keeping. Management of a regulated entity is responsible for establishing and maintaining adequate accounting records and systems and controls. In this regard, the SFC has issued guidance to licensed corporations in the Control Techniques for Client Asset Rules. This recognizes the position of trust under which client assets are held.
4. This Appendix is separated into three sections as follows:
  - A. client securities and scheme securities;
  - B. client money and scheme money; and
  - C. no client assets.

The sections on client securities and scheme securities and client money and scheme money also set out the relevant planning considerations.

5. This Appendix is to assist the auditor in determining the scope of the work for each individual audit. However it is not intended to limit or replace individual professional judgment, initiative and vigilance. Regulated entities vary in business type, structure, process and size. There is no standard approach but audit procedures should be designed to meet the requirements of the particular situation, giving careful consideration to the specific circumstances. This is a matter that requires the exercise of professional judgment in the light of the circumstances of each particular case.
6. Where the auditor discovers that the systems have failed or material differences have arisen, it considers the implications these may have on other areas of its work, on its reporting obligations and, in particular, on the "truth and fairness" of the financial statements.

## A. CLIENT SECURITIES AND SCHEME SECURITIES

### Part I - Introduction

7. Client securities, for the purpose of the Client Securities Rules, are securities that are:
- a. either
    - i. listed or traded on a recognised stock market; or
    - ii. interests in a collective investment scheme authorized by the SFC under section 104 of the SFO; and
  - b. received or held in Hong Kong by or on behalf of
    - i. a licensed corporation in the course of the conduct of any regulated activity for which the licensed corporation is licensed; or
    - ii. an associated entity of an intermediary in relation to the conduct of any regulated activity.
8. Scheme securities, for the purpose of the Client Securities Rules, are client securities that are:
- a. either
    - i. listed or traded on a recognised stock market; or
    - ii. interests in a collective investment scheme authorized by the SFC under section 104 of the SFO; and
  - b. in relation to an intermediary
    - i. received or held in Hong Kong by or on behalf of the intermediary in the course of the conduct of Type 13 regulated activity; or
    - ii. received or held in Hong Kong by or on behalf of any corporation which is in a controlling entity relationship with an intermediary, in relation to the conduct of Type 13 regulated activity,
- constituting relevant CIS property in respect of a relevant CIS.
9. Scheme documents, in relation to a relevant CIS, means –
- a. if the relevant CIS is constituted in the form of a trust – the trust deed constituting or governing the relevant CIS;
  - b. if the relevant CIS is constituted in any other form – the documents governing the formation or constitution of the relevant CIS; and
  - c. other documents setting out the requirements relating to –
    - i. the custody and safekeeping of any relevant CIS property; or
    - ii. the oversight of the operations of the relevant CIS.
10. The Client Securities Rules do not apply to client securities of a licensed corporation that are in an account established and maintained by a client of the licensed corporation, in that client's name, with a person other than the licensed corporation or an associated entity of the licensed corporation.<sup>1</sup> The Client Securities Rules do not apply to client securities (including scheme

---

<sup>1</sup> This does not apply to -  
 (a) an intermediary licensed or registered for Type 13 regulated activity; or  
 (b) an associated entity of the intermediary, in relation to the conduct by the intermediary of that regulated activity.

securities) that are received or held outside Hong Kong by a licensed corporation or its associated entity.

11. Part II of Section A does not apply to a licensed corporation licensed for Type 13 regulated activity or an associated entity of the licensed corporation in relation to the conduct by the licensed corporation of that regulated activity.
12. Part III of Section A applies only to a licensed corporation licensed for Type 13 regulated activity or an associated entity of the licensed corporation in relation to the conduct by the licensed corporation of that regulated activity.
13. For the particular regulated activity, the auditor needs to understand what may constitute client securities that are covered by the Client Securities Rules. It would consider all situations and transaction types that may be entered into by the regulated entity. Although the regulated entity may consider that a particular area is not covered by the rules relating to client securities, the auditor needs to be alert to situations where this is incorrect and the regulated entity is in breach of the Client Securities Rules as a result.

### **Control objective**

14. The control objectives that a regulated entity administering or holding client securities or securities collateral will need to meet and the evidence that may be available to the auditor upon which it can base its conclusions are outlined below. They are only indicative.
15. Not every regulated entity, particularly a smaller one, will be able to meet all these objectives through the establishment of formal controls and segregation of duties. In consequence, not all the evidence indicated below will be available in every case.
16. This does not necessarily mean that the regulated entity has weak controls or that there is insufficient evidence for the auditor to give a conclusion. The regulated entity may well have adequate controls due to close supervision by the management, taking into account the low volume of client securities handled.
17. In some cases, therefore, the auditor may place greater reliance on observation and enquiry for its audit evidence than inspection of documentation. In doing so, it needs to bear in mind that undocumented systems are more prone to error and fraud, and that its presence and enquiries may influence the manner in which procedures are operated at that time.

**Part II – Client securities received or held by Licensed Corporations other than in the Conduct of Type 13 Regulated Activity and their Associated Entities**

**Adequate systems of control - Timely renewal of standing authorities (section 4(4))**

**Control objectives - Timely renewal of standing authorities**

18. The main factors that will be considered are:
- a. satisfactory arrangements for ensuring that standing authorities that are due for renewal are identified;
  - b. satisfactory arrangements for notifying clients that their standing authorities are due to expire and informing them that unless clients object, they will be renewed upon the same terms and conditions; and
  - c. satisfactory notification to clients of the renewal of the standing authorities within the specified time frame.

**Evidence - Timely renewal of standing authorities**

19. The main factors that will be considered are:
- a. retention of client standing authorities in a secure environment;
  - b. tracking system for timely identification of standing authorities that are approaching expiry;
  - c. management review of standing authority renewal notices prior to despatch;
  - d. client relationship personnel follow up expiring standing authorities with clients to ensure they have received notifications;
  - e. evidence of spot checks of standing authorities by the compliance or internal audit department to ensure that current standing authorities are in place; and
  - f. evidence of procedures for ensuring that standing authority renewal notices have been provided within one week after expiry.

**Adequate systems of control - Deposit or registration of client securities and securities collateral (section 5)**

**Control objectives - Deposit or registration of client securities and securities collateral**

20. The main factors that will be considered are:
- a. whether registerable client securities are registered in a name permitted by the rules;
  - b. where client securities are deposited in the same name as that used for the intermediary's house positions, that the client securities are deposited in a designated account different from that in which its house positions are deposited;
  - c. securities held as collateral can be separately identified;
  - d. arrangements for releasing documents under stock lending and borrowing arrangements are in accordance with the rules;
  - e. satisfactory arrangements for ensuring that the client securities were held or securities collateral kept after receipt in a segregated account or registered in the name of the client from whom or on whose behalf the client securities have been received, or the intermediary (applicable to securities collateral only) or associated entity;

- f. satisfactory arrangements for ensuring that where client securities and securities collateral are deposited in safe custody, that the financial institutions, custodians or other intermediaries in question are appropriately authorized, approved or licensed as appropriate;
- g. satisfactory arrangements for withdrawal or disposal of client securities and securities collateral to be made to or by the client, or to or by any authorized party as specified in sections 5 and 6 of the Client Securities Rules upon the circumstances or under discretionary powers given in the client agreement;
- h. risk assessments to be carried out on all custodians to assess the risk of placing client securities and securities collateral with a third party;
- i. written arrangements between the intermediary or associated entity and the custodian covering at least the minimum requirements of the rules; and
- j. an adequate system to ensure that statements are sent to clients at required intervals, and that such statements properly reflect the regulated entity's records.

**Evidence - Deposit or registration of client securities and securities collateral**

21. The main factors that will be considered are:
- a. written instructions from clients stating the manner in which their securities are to be registered; these instructions may be set out in standard client agreements;
  - b. written procedures setting out how each security is to be identified so as to reflect the client's entitlement to that security (e.g. registered in the client's name);
  - c. where client securities are registered in the name of the intermediary or an associated entity, that an appropriate record of the interests of individual clients is maintained;
  - d. clear segregation of client securities from other securities;
  - e. separate registers maintained of securities held as collateral;
  - f. evidence of appropriate authority to engage in stock lending arrangements, given to the regulated entity by the clients concerned;
  - g. separate records of all such transactions sufficient to show the details of the stocks lent at any time and the collateral held;
  - h. proper segregation of duties which ensure each area is staffed by people independent of any other operations and password controls;
  - i. qualifications and experience of senior management;
  - j. strong boxes, fire-proof rooms and safes, restricted access via password controlled doors or limited access to keys, especially where important documents such as securities certificates, were kept in the office premise;
  - k. regular stock reconciliations performed for each stock segregated account against third party supporting documents;
  - l. follow up actions taken by the licensed corporation on any reconciling or unusual entries in the stock records, particularly negative stock balances;
  - m. evidence of spot checks of the custodian area by the compliance or internal audit department;

- n. written procedures stating how custodian staff are to process the movement of securities and what is required in the form of authorization;
- o. evidence of procedures for selection of external financial institutions, custodians or other intermediaries to ensure that they are eligible and suitable to hold client securities and securities collateral in safe custody;
- p. results of a risk assessment process including external information on credit rating, financial results etc. of the custodian and internal information on customer service received;
- q. letters of agreement with custodians stating the terms under which they are operating;
- r. file copies of statements sent to clients, which agree with the records; and
- s. procedures and controls (e.g. completed checklist) to ensure that all clients receive a statement (where required).

**Adequate systems of control - Depositing and transferring client securities and securities collateral (section 10(1))**

22. Under section 10(1) of the Client Securities Rules a regulated entity is required to take reasonable steps to ensure that client securities and securities collateral of the intermediary are not:
- i. deposited;
  - ii. transferred;
  - iii. lent;
  - iv. pledged;
  - v. repledged; or
  - vi. otherwise dealt with,

except as provided in Part 2 of the Client Securities Rules.

The relevant elements of the Client Securities Rules in Part 2 (covering sections 5, 6, 7, 8 and 9) in summary cover the following:

- a. *Section 5 - requirements for deposit or registration of client securities and securities collateral*

Unless client securities and securities collateral are registered in the name of the client, or the associated entity (or the intermediary in the case of securities collateral):

- i. client securities are:
  - deposited in safe custody in a segregated account which is designated as a trust account or client account in Hong Kong with an authorized financial institution, an approved custodian or another intermediary licensed for dealing in securities;
- ii. securities collateral is:
  - deposited in safe custody in a segregated account which is designated as a trust account or client account in Hong Kong with an authorized financial institution, an approved custodian or another intermediary licensed for dealing in securities; or



- deposited in an account in the name of the intermediary or associated entity with authorized financial institution, an approved custodian or another intermediary licensed for dealing in securities.

*b. Section 6 - dealings with client securities and securities collateral*

A regulated entity may deal with client securities or securities collateral in accordance with:

- i. an oral or written direction to sell or to settle such a sale order;
- ii. a written direction to withdraw the client securities or securities collateral (where required under section 5);
- iii. a standing authority, except where this will result in:
  - a transfer of client securities or securities collateral to an account in Hong Kong other than an account referred to in section 5 or otherwise result in the intermediary, associated entity or a related corporation of the intermediary having the benefit or use of the client securities or securities collateral;
  - a transfer of the client securities or securities collateral to an officer or employee, unless he is the client in question; or
  - an unconscionable transaction in the sense of the Unconscionable Contracts Ordinance.

Where a licensed corporation is licensed for asset management, with the written agreement of the client, the licensed corporation may withdraw client securities from a trust account or client account, or deal with client securities that have been registered in the name of the client or an associated entity, for the purpose of selling the securities or settling a sale order on behalf of the client.

Where there is a liability owed by or on behalf of a client, with that client's written agreement, a licensed corporation may dispose, or initiate a disposal by any of its associated entities, of any of the client securities or securities collateral in settlement of that liability.

*c. Section 7 - treatment of client securities and securities collateral by intermediaries licensed for dealing in securities and their associated entities*

With a standing authority a licensed corporation licensed for dealing in securities may:

- i. apply any of the securities or securities collateral pursuant to a securities borrowing or lending agreement;
- ii. subject to the requirement of having repledged securities not exceeding 140% of aggregate margin loans, deposit any of the securities collateral in question with an authorized financial institution as collateral for financial accommodation provided; or
- iii. deposit any of the securities collateral in question with a recognised clearing house or another intermediary licensed or registered for dealing in securities as collateral for the discharge and satisfaction of the licensed corporation's settlement obligations and liabilities.

*d. Section 8 - treatment of securities collateral by intermediaries licensed for securities margin financing and their associated entities*

Subject to the requirement of having repledged securities not exceeding 140% of aggregate margin loans, with a standing authority a licensed corporation licensed for securities margin financing may deposit any of the securities collateral that it receives with an authorized

financial institution or an intermediary licensed for dealing in securities as collateral for financial accommodation provided to the licensed corporation.

e. *Section 8A – repledging*

- i. A regulated entity is required to ascertain the closing aggregate market value of the repledged securities collateral for each business day does not exceed 140% of its aggregate margin loan on the same date;
- ii. If such 140% limit has been exceeded on any business day, the regulated entity is required to withdraw any excess to reduce such ratio to below the limit by the end of the next business day.

f. *Section 9 - treatment of securities collateral by intermediaries licensed for dealing in futures contracts and their associated entities*

With a standing authority a licensed corporation licensed for dealing in futures contracts may deposit any of the securities collateral that it receives with a recognised clearing house or an intermediary licensed or registered for dealing in futures contracts as collateral for the discharge and satisfaction of the licensed corporation's settlement obligations and liabilities.

**Control objectives - Depositing and transferring client securities and securities collateral**

23. The control objectives that have been included in paragraph 20 above apply here. Additional factors that will be considered are:
- a. written procedures in place covering client dealing and transfer instructions;
  - b. controls provide assurance that client instructions are authorized prior to being actioned;
  - c. standing authorities are valid and current;
  - d. transfers of client securities and securities collateral are made to appropriate authorized accounts;
  - e. controls provide assurance that at the end of each business day repledged securities – that exceed 140% of aggregate margin loans are promptly identified and rectification action is taken within the following business day in accordance with the rules; and
  - f. where a client has failed to deliver the stock to the licensed corporation to settle his sale order, the securities of other clients are not used to settle the obligations of the client except as provided in Part 2 of the Client Securities Rules.

**Evidence - Depositing and transferring client securities and securities collateral**

24. The main factors that will be considered are:
- a. availability of up-to-date written procedures covering the handling of client instructions;
  - b. evidence that client instructions are verified as authentic and valid before being actioned;
  - c. evidence that client standing orders are checked that they are current and cover the transaction in question each time they are used;
  - d. evidence that where appropriate client securities and securities collateral are only transferred to or deposited with authorized financial institutions, approved custodians or other intermediaries licensed for dealing in securities;
  - e. where the licensed corporation has both cash clients and margin clients, the auditor should check whether separate designated accounts are maintained;

- f. where client securities are maintained through CCASS or CMU, to determine whether securities received are allocated and transferred to the appropriate account within the timeframe as specified by the rules;
- g. whether the licensed corporation has taken effective actions to follow up on any negative stock balance in its stock records and client ledger; and
- h. the maximum amount of securities that the licensed corporation is permitted under section 8A of the Client Securities Rules to repledge is calculated on an ongoing basis and compared with the aggregate value of securities actually repledged, and rectification action is carried out within the statutory timeframe for any breach of the limit.

**Adequate accounting records have been maintained**

**Control objectives - Adequate accounting records have been maintained**

25. The main factors that will be considered are:
- a. proper and prompt recording of the movements of documents (this includes all documents, including those relating to the regulated entity's own securities as there is a risk of teeming and lading and having client documents mixed with the regulated entity's own documents);
  - b. proper and prompt recording of all purchases and sales of securities on behalf of clients;
  - c. records in agreement with the statements sent to clients of assets held on their behalf;
  - d. reconciliations carried out in accordance with the rules; and
  - e. proper and prompt accounting for benefits, such as bonus or scrip issues accruing to clients.

**Evidence - Adequate accounting records have been maintained**

26. The main factors that will be considered are:
- a. evidence that documents of title are recorded immediately on receipt;
  - b. evidence that documents of title are not released from the regulated entity's control to clients, registrars, brokers, etc. without the records being amended;
  - c. records kept in respect of any document clearly setting out the date of receipt and despatch of the document, the nature of the document, the client to whom the document relates, and the nature, amount and nominal value of the securities to which the document relates;
  - d. evidence that statements are sent to clients at the required intervals, made up to the appropriate date, and properly specifying the documents held. In this context, the auditor may consider obtaining direct confirmation from clients;
  - e. evidence that correspondence from clients querying statements (including client complaints) and any other queries have been dealt with properly and promptly;
  - f. evidence that benefits such as dividends or scrip issues are collectively and correctly allocated to each client;
  - g. evidence that reconciliations have been carried out in accordance with the rules (for more detailed guidance on reconciliations see paragraphs 39 to 47 below); and
  - h. circularization of account balances in accordance with paragraphs 72 to 80 in Part II of this PN.

**Part III – Scheme securities received or held by Licensed Corporations in the Conduct of Type 13 Regulated Activity and their Associated Entities**

**Adequate systems of control – Identification of relevant CIS (section 9B)**

**Control objectives - Identification of relevant CIS**

27. The main factor that will be considered is the satisfactory arrangements for ensuring that relevant CIS are identified.

**Evidence - Identification of relevant CIS**

28. The main factors that will be considered are:
- a. retention of scheme documents in a secure environment; and
  - b. evidence of procedures for ensuring that relevant CIS are identified.

**Adequate systems of control - Deposit or registration of scheme securities (section 9B)**

**Control objectives - Deposit or registration of scheme securities**

29. The main factors that will be considered are:
- a. whether registerable scheme securities are registered in a name permitted by the rules;
  - b. where scheme securities are deposited in the same name as that used for the intermediary's house positions, that the scheme securities are deposited in a designated account different from that in which its house positions are deposited;
  - c. arrangements for releasing documents under stock lending and borrowing arrangements are in accordance with the rules;
  - d. satisfactory arrangements for ensuring that the scheme securities were held in a segregated account or registered in the name of the relevant CIS or associated entity on behalf of the relevant CIS;
  - e. satisfactory arrangements for ensuring that where scheme securities are deposited in safe custody, that the financial institutions, custodians or other intermediaries in question are appropriately authorized, approved or licensed as appropriate;
  - f. satisfactory arrangements for withdrawal or disposal of scheme securities to be made to or by the relevant CIS, or to or by any authorized party as specified in sections 9B and 9C of the Client Securities Rules upon the circumstances or in any provisions of the scheme documents of the relevant CIS;
  - g. risk assessments to be carried out on all custodians to assess the risk of placing scheme securities with parties other than the licensed corporation; and
  - h. written arrangements between the intermediary or associated entity and the custodian covering at least the minimum requirements of the rules.

**Evidence - Deposit or registration of scheme securities**

30. The main factors that will be considered are:
- a. scheme documents from relevant CIS stating the manner in which their securities are to be registered;

- b. written procedures setting out how each security is to be identified so as to reflect the relevant CIS's entitlement to that security (e.g. registered in the relevant CIS's name);
- c. where scheme securities are registered in the name of an associated entity of the intermediary, that an appropriate record of the interests of individual relevant CIS is maintained;
- d. clear segregation of scheme securities from other securities;
- e. separate registers maintained of securities held as collateral;
- f. evidence of appropriate authority to engage in stock lending arrangements, in accordance with written instructions related to the specified scheme securities in respect of a relevant CIS, which does not contravene any provisions of the scheme documents of the relevant CIS;
- g. separate records of all such transactions sufficient to show the details of the stocks lent at any time and the collateral held;
- h. proper segregation of duties which ensure each area is staffed by people independent of any other operations and password controls;
- i. qualifications and experience of senior management;
- j. strong boxes, fire-proof rooms and safes, restricted access via password controlled doors or limited access to keys, especially where important documents such as securities certificates, were kept in the office premise;
- k. regular stock reconciliations performed for each stock segregated account against third party supporting documents;
- l. follow up actions taken by the licensed corporation on any reconciling or unusual entries in the stock records, particularly negative stock balances;
- m. evidence of spot checks of the custodian area by the compliance or internal audit department;
- n. written procedures stating how custodian staff are to process the movement of securities and what is required in the form of authorization;
- o. evidence of procedures for selection of external financial institutions, custodians or other intermediaries to ensure that they are eligible and suitable to hold scheme securities in safe custody;
- p. results of a risk assessment process including external information on credit rating, financial results etc. of the custodian and internal information on customer service received; and
- q. letters of agreement with custodians stating the terms under which they are operating.

**Adequate systems of control - Depositing and transferring scheme securities (section 10A(1))**

31. Under section 10A(1) of the Client Securities Rules a regulated entity is required to take reasonable steps to ensure that scheme securities of the intermediary are not:
- i. deposited;
  - ii. transferred;
  - iii. lent;

- iv. pledged;
- v. repledged; or
- vi. otherwise dealt with,

except as provided in Part 2A of the Client Securities Rules.

The relevant elements of the Client Securities Rules in Part 2A (covering sections 9B, and 9C) in summary cover the following:

*a. Section 9B - requirements for deposit or registration of scheme securities*

Unless scheme securities are registered in the name of the relevant CIS, or the associated entity on behalf of the relevant CIS, scheme securities are deposited in safe custody in a segregated account which is designated as a trust account or client account in Hong Kong with an authorized financial institution, an approved custodian or another intermediary licensed for dealing in securities.

*b. Section 9C - dealings with client securities*

A regulated entity may deal with scheme securities in accordance with:

- i. a written instruction to settle an order to sell scheme securities executed on behalf of the relevant CIS; or
- ii. a written instruction to withdraw the scheme securities from an account referred to in section 9B(a) or to deal with scheme securities that have been registered in accordance with section 9B(b).

**Control objectives - Depositing and transferring scheme securities**

32. The control objectives that have been included in paragraph 29 above apply here. Additional factors that will be considered are:

- a. written procedures in place covering relevant CIS dealing and transfer instructions;
- b. controls provide assurance that written instructions related to specified scheme securities in respect of a relevant CIS are authorized prior to being actioned and do not contravene any provisions of the scheme documents of the relevant CIS;
- c. transfers of scheme securities are made to appropriate authorized accounts; and
- d. controls provide assurance that the scheme securities of one relevant CIS are not used to settle the obligations of another relevant CIS.

**Evidence - Depositing and transferring scheme securities**

33. The main factors that will be considered are:

- a. availability of up-to-date written procedures covering the handling of written instructions related to specified scheme securities in respect of a relevant CIS;
- b. evidence that written instructions related to specified scheme securities in respect of a relevant CIS are verified as authentic and valid before being actioned;
- c. evidence that where appropriate scheme securities are only transferred to or deposited with authorized financial institutions, approved custodians or other intermediaries licensed for dealing in securities;

- d. where scheme securities are maintained through CCASS or CMU, to determine whether securities received are allocated and transferred to the appropriate account within the timeframe as specified by the rules; and
- e. whether the licensed corporation has taken effective actions to follow up on any negative stock balance in its stock records and ledger of a relevant CIS.

### **Adequate accounting records have been maintained**

#### **Control objectives - Adequate accounting records have been maintained**

34. The main factors that will be considered are:
- a. proper and prompt recording of the movements of documents (this includes all documents, including those relating to the regulated entity's own securities as there is a risk of teeming and lading and having documents related to relevant CIS mixed with the regulated entity's own documents);
  - b. proper and prompt recording of all the movements of scheme securities received or held on behalf of relevant CIS;
  - c. reconciliations carried out in accordance with the rules; and
  - d. proper and prompt accounting for benefits, such as bonus or scrip issues accruing to relevant CIS.

#### **Evidence - Adequate accounting records have been maintained**

35. The main factors that will be considered are:
- a. evidence that documents of title are recorded immediately on receipt;
  - b. evidence that documents of title are not released from the regulated entity's control to registrars, brokers, etc. without the records being amended;
  - c. records kept in respect of any document clearly setting out the date of receipt and despatch of the document, the nature of the document, the relevant CIS to whom the document relates, and the nature, amount and nominal value of the securities to which the document relates;
  - d. evidence that benefits such as dividends or scrip issues are collectively and correctly allocated to each relevant CIS;
  - e. evidence that reconciliations have been carried out in accordance with the rules (for more detailed guidance on reconciliations see paragraphs 39 to 47 below); and
  - f. circularization of scheme securities in accordance with paragraphs 72 to 80 in Part II of this PN (where applicable).

## Part IV – Miscellaneous

### Adequate systems of control - Reporting of non-compliance with certain provisions of the rules (section 12)

#### Control objectives - Reporting of non-compliance with certain provisions of the rules

36. The main factors that will be considered are:
- a. system in place to identify potential incidents of non-compliance with the rules;
  - b. potential incidents of non-compliance reported to management on a timely basis; and
  - c. matters of non-compliance (a reportable matter as defined in section 157 of the SFO) are reported to the SFC in writing within one business day.

#### Evidence - Reporting of non-compliance with certain provisions of the rules

37. The main factors that will be considered are:
- a. evidence that the business has a system in place to identify potential incidents of non-compliance with the rules;
  - b. level of awareness amongst staff of the rules;
  - c. records kept in relation to potential incidents of non-compliance demonstrating that these have been reported to management on a timely basis; and
  - d. evidence that matters of non-compliance have been reported to the SFC in writing within one business day.

### Compliance with the rules

38. The work that the auditor will have performed as outlined above in relation to determining whether during the financial year under review, the regulated entity had adequate systems of control in place to ensure compliance with the applicable sections 4(4), 5, 9B, 10(1), 10A(1) and 12 of the Client Securities Rules is likely to also enable it to report on whether during the financial year under review, the regulated entity has complied with the applicable sections 4(4), 5, 9B, 10(1), 10A(1) and 12 of the Client Securities Rules.

Depending on the results of the work on the systems of control, some additional testing is likely to be required to enable the auditor to issue its opinion on the regulated entity's compliance with the rules during the financial year under review.

The auditor would consider obtaining written representations from management that all incidents of non-compliance with the rules have been disclosed, or that there have been no incidents of non-compliance.

### Reconciliations

39. The requirement to carry out reconciliations is set out in the Keeping of Records Rules. Further guidance on client asset reconciliation is set out in the Control Techniques for Client Asset Rules.

#### *Control objectives - Reconciliation of client securities - Physically held client securities*

40. The main factors that will be considered are:
- a. physical counts and reconciliations of all securities performed with at least the frequency and in the manner required by the rules, and by staff (in so far as possible) independent of the custodian department;



- b. procedures planned and implemented to ensure that the count of client title documents is accurate;
- c. timely clearance of reconciling items; and
- d. records retained of the dates and results of the physical counts.

*Evidence - Reconciliation of client securities - Physically held client securities*

41. The main factors that will be considered are:
- a. detailed instructions for the counts;
  - b. an independent function (such as compliance department or internal audit) organizing, controlling or participating in carrying out the counts and reconciliations;
  - c. sufficient time and resources devoted to the counts and reconciliations;
  - d. full and clear documentation of the counts and reconciliations;
  - e. counts carried out at the frequency and with the time limits required by the rules;
  - f. adequate explanations for reconciling items; and
  - g. completion of reconciliations (i.e. all items explained).

*Control objectives - Reconciliation of client securities - Client securities held by a custodian or scheme securities held by a global custodian or a sub-custodian*

42. The main factors that will be considered are:
- a. reconciliations for all client securities held by custodians or scheme securities held by global custodians or sub-custodians performed with at least the frequency and in the manner required by the rules and the Control Techniques for Client Asset Rules;
  - b. timely clearance of reconciling items;
  - c. the reconciliations undertaken by a person who is not involved with the recording or movement of the assets, if the size of the regulated entity permits this segregation of duties; and
  - d. records retained of the dates and results of reconciliations including confirmations from external custodians (for a licensed corporation licensed for Type 13 regulated activity: authorized financial institutions, approved custodians and other intermediaries licensed for dealing in securities).

*Evidence - Reconciliation of client securities - Client securities held by a custodian or scheme securities held by a global custodian or a sub-custodian*

43. The main factors that will be considered are:
- a. an independent function carrying out the reconciliations;
  - b. sufficient time and resources devoted to reconciliations;
  - c. full and clear documentation of the reconciliations;
  - d. reconciliations carried out at the frequency required by the rules;
  - e. adequate explanations for reconciling items; and

- f. completion of reconciliations (i.e. all items explained).
- 44. Where client securities are physically held by the regulated entity itself, the auditor may attend part or all of one of the physical counts of client title documents. In reaching a conclusion regarding the extent to which this is necessary, the auditor considers the strength of controls surrounding, and the independence of, the count, reconciliation, day to day processing and custody of client documents of title.
- 45. The auditor examines confirmations from independent custodians of documents of title held by them.
- 46. The auditor inspects correspondence and agreements with custodians in order to verify compliance with the rules.
- 47. In larger regulated entities, a rolling reconciliation basis of confirming client title documents (similar to a manufacturing company's system of perpetual stock-taking) is sometimes adopted. Care must be taken to ensure that systems and controls are in place to prevent teeming and lading.

## **B. CLIENT MONEY AND SCHEME MONEY**

### **Part I - Introduction**

48. The Client Money Rules apply to client money of a licensed corporation that is received or held by or on behalf of:
- a. the licensed corporation, in the course of the conduct of any regulated activity for which the licensed corporation is licensed; or
  - b. an associated entity of the licensed corporation where such an associated entity is not an authorized financial institution, in relation to such conduct of the regulated activity.

The Client Money Rules do not therefore apply to associated entities of registered institutions. The reference to “regulated entity” in this section below is therefore restricted to a licensed corporation or its associated entity that is not an authorized financial institution.

49. The Client Money Rules do not apply to client money (including scheme money) of a licensed corporation that is received or held outside Hong Kong by the licensed corporation or an associated entity of the licensed corporation.
50. The Client Money Rules do not apply to client money of a licensed corporation that is in a bank account established and maintained by a client of the licensed corporation in that client’s name.
51. Paragraph 50 and Part II of this section do not apply to a licensed corporation licensed for Type 13 regulated activity or an associated entity of the licensed corporation in relation to the conduct by the licensed corporation of that regulated activity.
52. Part III of this section applies only to a licensed corporation licensed for Type 13 regulated activity or an associated entity of the licensed corporation in relation to the conduct by the licensed corporation of that regulated activity.
53. For the particular regulated entity, the auditor needs to understand what may constitute client money that is covered by the Client Money Rules. It would consider all situations and transaction types that may be entered into by the regulated entity. Although the regulated entity may consider that a particular area is not covered by the rules relating to client money, the auditor needs to be alert to situations where this is incorrect and the regulated entity is in breach of the Client Money Rules as a result.

### **Segregated accounts**

54. When a regulated entity holds or expects to hold client money or scheme money in respect of a relevant CIS, it must open one or more segregated accounts, each of which shall be designated as a trust account or client account. These must be established and maintained with:
- a. an authorized financial institution; or
  - b. any other institution approved by the SFC for the purposes of the Client Money Rules, either generally or in a particular case.

### **Control Objective**

55. The control objectives that the auditor would expect to see in a regulated entity holding client money and the evidence from which the auditor seeks to draw reasonable conclusions are outlined below. They are only indicative and will not be applicable to all regulated entities holding client money, especially smaller ones.

**Part II – Client money received or held by Licensed Corporations other than in the Conduct of Type 13 Regulated Activity and their Associated Entities**

**Adequate systems of controls - Payment of client money into segregated accounts (section 4)**

56. Client money held by the regulated entity has to be held on trust for clients in one or more segregated bank accounts designated as a trust account or client account.

**Control objectives - Payment of client money into segregated account**

57. The main factors that will be considered are:
- a. all client money is paid within one business day into a segregated account;
  - b. bank accounts opened only with an authorized financial institution, or any other institution approved by the SFC for the purposes of the Client Money Rules;
  - c. bank accounts include “Client Account” or “Trust Account” in their description in accordance with section 4(1) of the Client Money Rules;
  - d. appropriate statements, confirmations and agreements sent to and received from the authorized financial institutions;
  - e. systems are adequate to identify all client money;
  - f. systems are adequate to ensure that all client money and only client money is paid in compliance with the rules (other than where it is specifically allowed by the rules);
  - g. systems are adequate to ensure that all client money is paid in promptly; that is within one business day, unless otherwise disposed of in accordance with the rules; and
  - h. client money is only applied for the purposes of the client to whom it relates.

**Evidence - Payment of client money into segregated accounts**

58. The main factors that will be considered are:
- a. clear internal instructions setting out the procedures to be followed in dealing with any potential client money;
  - b. suitable levels of staff (i.e. with the appropriate training and experience) responsible for establishing segregated accounts and identifying client money within the regulated entity;
  - c. lodgements regularly and promptly made;
  - d. lodgements to segregated accounts comprise client money only, except as otherwise permitted;
  - e. lodgements to non-client accounts do not include client money;
  - f. an up to date list of all bank accounts which identifies those that are segregated accounts; and
  - g. bank statements agreeing to the regulated entity’s records.

**Adequate systems of controls - Payment of client money out of segregated accounts (section 5)**

**Control objectives - Payment of client money out of segregated accounts**

59. The main factors that will be considered are:
- a. systems are adequate to ensure that all client money withdrawals in Hong Kong are made in compliance with the rules; and
  - b. all withdrawals from segregated accounts are made only for prescribed purposes and in accordance with the rules.

**Evidence - Payment of client money out of segregated accounts**

60. The main factor that will be considered is:
- a. withdrawals are properly authorized and for purposes approved by the rules.

**Adequate systems of controls - Treatment of interest on client money held in segregated accounts (section 6)**

61. The Client Money Rules require that interest derived from client money is held in a segregated account. To the extent that any amount of interest retained in a segregated account which the regulated entity is entitled to retain under an agreement with the client(s), this would be paid out of the account within one business day after the interest is credited to the account or the regulated entity becomes aware that the interest has been credited to the account.

**Control objectives - Treatment of interest on client money held in segregated accounts**

62. The main factors that will be considered are:
- a. appropriate procedures in place for identifying and withdrawing regulated entity's entitlement of interest on segregated accounts on a timely basis;
  - b. where applicable, interest paid on all money subject to interest calculations; and
  - c. interest payments correctly calculated by reference to the appropriate dates.

**Evidence - Treatment of interest on client money held in segregated accounts**

63. The main factors that will be considered are:
- a. evidence that regulated entity's interest entitlements are withdrawn on a timely basis in accordance with the rules; and
  - b. schedules showing how interest due to clients has been calculated (or equivalent computer processes).

**Adequate systems of control - Timely renewal of standing authorities (section 8(4))**

**Control objectives - Timely renewal of standing authorities**

64. The main factors that will be considered are:
- a. satisfactory arrangements for ensuring that standing authorities that are due for renewal are identified;
  - b. satisfactory arrangements for notifying clients that their standing authorities are due to expire and informing them that unless clients object, they will be renewed upon the same terms and conditions; and

- c. satisfactory notification to clients of the renewal of the standing authorities within the specified time frame.

**Evidence - Timely renewal of standing authorities**

- 65. The main factors that will be considered are:
  - a. retention of client standing authorities in a secure environment;
  - b. tracking system for timely identification of standing authorities that are approaching expiry;
  - c. management review of standing authority renewal notices prior to despatch;
  - d. client relationship personnel follow up expiring standing authorities with clients to ensure they have received notifications;
  - e. evidence of spot checks of standing authorities by the compliance or internal audit department to ensure that current authorities are in place; and
  - f. evidence of procedures for ensuring that standing authority renewal notices have been provided within one week after expiry.

**Adequate systems of controls - Requirement to pay money other than client money out of segregated accounts (section 10)**

- 66. The Client Money Rules require that a regulated entity which becomes aware that it is holding an amount of money in a segregated account that is not client money of the regulated entity shall, within one business day of becoming so aware, pay that amount of money out of the segregated account.

**Control objectives - Requirement to pay money other than client money out of segregated accounts**

- 67. The main factor that will be considered is appropriate procedures in place for identifying and withdrawing regulated entity's money from segregated accounts on a timely basis.

**Evidence - Requirement to pay money other than client money out of segregated accounts**

- 68. The main factor that will be considered is evidence that regulated entity's money is withdrawn on a timely basis in accordance with the rules.

**Part III – Scheme money received or held by Licensed Corporations in the Conduct of Type 13 Regulated Activity and their Associated Entities**

**Adequate systems of controls - Payment of scheme money into segregated accounts and relevant CIS accounts (section 10B)**

69. In general, scheme money held by the regulated entity for a relevant CIS must be kept on trust in one or more segregated accounts designated as a trust account or client account for a relevant CIS (as detailed in section 10B(1) – (4)); however, if a relevant CIS is in the form of an open-ended fund company or any other corporate form, scheme money held for the relevant CIS may be kept in one more relevant CIS account for the relevant CIS (as detailed in section 10B(5) – (7)).

**Control objectives - Payment of scheme money into segregated account and relevant CIS accounts**

70. The main factors that will be considered are:
- a. the satisfactory arrangements for ensuring that relevant CIS are identified;
  - b. all scheme money received in accordance with the rules is paid within three business days into a segregated account in respect of the relevant CIS or a relevant CIS account for a relevant CIS that is constituted in the form of an open-ended fund company (or other corporate form) except for circumstances as detailed in section 10B(8)(a) – (c) of the Client Money Rules or in accordance with a written instruction required under section 10E of the Client Money Rules;
  - c. segregated accounts and relevant CIS accounts opened only with an authorized financial institution, or any other institution approved by the SFC for the purposes of the Client Money Rules;
  - d. segregated accounts include “Client Account” or “Trust Account” in their description in accordance with section 10B(1) of the Client Money Rules;
  - e. relevant CIS account opens only in the name of the relevant CIS in accordance with section 10A of the Client Money Rules;
  - f. each segregated account or relevant CIS account for scheme money must be established and maintained for only 1 relevant CIS, including its sub-fund(s) or separated segregated accounts and relevant CIS accounts for scheme money may be established and maintained in respect of the relevant CIS and each of its sub-fund(s);
  - g. appropriate statements, confirmations and agreements sent to and received from the authorized financial institutions;
  - h. systems are adequate to identify all scheme money;
  - i. systems are adequate to ensure that all scheme money and only scheme money is paid in compliance with the rules (other than where it is specifically allowed by the rules);
  - j. systems are adequate to ensure that all scheme money is paid in promptly; that is within three business days, unless otherwise disposed of in accordance with the rules; and
  - k. scheme money is only applied for the purposes of the relevant CIS to which it relates.

**Evidence - Payment of scheme money into segregated accounts and relevant CIS accounts**

71. The main factors that will be considered are:
- a. evidence of procedures for ensuring that relevant CIS are identified;

- b. clear internal instructions setting out the procedures to be followed in dealing with any potential scheme money and the requirements of establishing segregated accounts or relevant CIS accounts for each relevant CIS;
- c. suitable levels of staff (i.e. with the appropriate training and experience) responsible for establishing segregated accounts or relevant CIS accounts and identifying scheme money within the regulated entity;
- d. lodgements regularly and promptly made;
- e. lodgements to segregated accounts or relevant CIS accounts comprise scheme money only, except as otherwise permitted;
- f. lodgements to all other accounts do not include scheme money (for the purpose of this subparagraph, "all other accounts" includes accounts in relation to other relevant CISs, non-relevant CISs and non-client accounts);
- g. an up to date list of all bank accounts which identifies those that are segregated accounts and relevant CIS accounts; and
- h. bank statements agreeing to the regulated entity's records.

**Adequate systems of controls - Payment of scheme money out of segregated accounts and relevant CIS accounts (section 10C)**

**Control objectives - Payment of scheme money out of segregated accounts and relevant CIS accounts**

72. The main factors that will be considered are:
- a. systems are adequate to ensure that all scheme money withdrawals are made in compliance with the rules; and
  - b. all withdrawals from segregated accounts or relevant CIS accounts are made only for prescribed purposes and in accordance with the rules.

**Evidence - Payment of scheme money out of segregated accounts and relevant CIS accounts**

73. The main factor that will be considered is:
- a. withdrawals are properly authorized and for purposes approved by the rules.

**Adequate systems of controls - Treatment of interest on scheme money held in segregated accounts and relevant CIS accounts (section 10D)**

74. The Client Money Rules require that scheme money in respect of a relevant CIS must deal with amounts of interest derived from the holding of the scheme money in a segregated account or a relevant CIS account in accordance with section 10C(1) of the Client Money Rules that must not pay it out of the account unless it is paid for the purposes approved by the rules.

**Control objectives - Treatment of interest on scheme money held in segregated accounts and relevant CIS accounts**

75. The main factors that will be considered are:
- a. appropriate procedures in place for identifying of and dealing with interest on segregated accounts or relevant CIS accounts on a timely basis;



- b. where applicable, interest paid on all money subject to interest calculations; and
- c. interest payments correctly calculated by reference to the appropriate dates.

**Evidence - Treatment of interest on scheme money held in segregated accounts and relevant CIS accounts**

76. The main factors that will be considered are:
- a. clear internal instructions setting out the procedures to be followed in identifying of and dealing with interest on segregated accounts or relevant CIS accounts in accordance with the rules; and
  - b. schedules showing how interest due to the relevant CIS has been calculated (or equivalent computer processes) and recorded.

## **Part IV – Miscellaneous**

### **Adequate systems of control - Reporting of non-compliance with certain provisions of the rules (section 11)**

#### **Control objectives - Reporting of non-compliance with certain provisions of the rules**

77. The main factors that will be considered are:
- a. system in place to identify potential incidents of non-compliance with the rules;
  - b. potential incidents of non-compliance reported to management on a timely basis; and
  - c. matters of non-compliance (a reportable matter as defined by section 157 of the SFO) are reported to the SFC in writing within one business day.

#### **Evidence - Reporting of non-compliance with certain provisions of the rules**

78. The main factors that will be considered are:
- a. evidence that the regulated entity has a system in place to identify potential incidents of non-compliance with the rules;
  - b. level of awareness amongst staff of the rules;
  - c. records kept in relation to potential incidents of non-compliance demonstrating that these have been reported to management on a timely basis; and
  - d. evidence that matters of non-compliance have been reported to the SFC in writing within one business day.

### **Compliance with the rules**

79. The work that the auditor will have performed as outlined above in relation to determining whether during the financial year under review, the regulated entity had adequate systems of control in place to ensure compliance with the applicable sections 4, 5, 6, 8(4), 10, 10B, 10C, 10D and 11 of the Client Money Rules is likely to also enable them to report on whether during the financial year under review, the regulated entity has complied with the applicable sections 4, 5, 6, 8(4), 10, 10B, 10C, 10D and 11 of the Client Money Rules.

Depending on the results of the work on the systems of control, some additional testing is likely to be required to enable the auditor to issue its conclusion on the regulated entity's compliance with the rules during the financial year under review.

The auditor would consider obtaining written representations from management that all incidents of non-compliance with the rules have been disclosed, or that there have been no incidents of non-compliance.

### **Adequate accounting records have been maintained**

#### **Control objectives - Adequate accounting records have been maintained**

80. The main factors that will be considered are:
- a. proper recording of movements of client money and scheme money;
  - b. interest credited in accordance with the rules;
  - c. reconciliations carried out in accordance with the rules; and
  - d. appropriate titles are given to accounts.

**Evidence - Adequate accounting records have been maintained**

81. The main factors that will be considered are:
- a. for non-Type 13 regulated activity, adequate details of the day to day entries of money paid into and out of the segregated accounts and individual client accounts including:
    - i. dates of receipts and payments;
    - ii. name of the client;
    - iii. name of the person from whom money was received or to whom it was paid, if other than the client;
    - iv. sub-ledgers with individual client accounts; and
    - v. evidence of designation from a client;
  - b. for Type 13 regulated activity, adequate details of the day to day entries of money paid into and out of the trust account, client account or relevant CIS account for each relevant CIS including:
    - i. dates of receipts and payments;
    - ii. name of the relevant CIS;
    - iii. name of the person from whom money was received or to whom it was paid, if other than the relevant CIS;
    - iv. sub-ledgers with each relevant CIS; and
    - v. evidence of designation from a relevant CIS;
  - c. records of the interest earned on the segregated accounts (for Type 13 regulated activity), the determination of the amount of interest payable to clients or relevant CIS (for Type 13 regulated activity) and the dates and amounts of interest paid/credited to clients or relevant CIS (for Type 13 regulated activity);
  - d. records maintained on a timely basis;
  - e. evidence that reconciliations have been carried out as required and reconciling items have been investigated and cleared promptly (for more detailed guidance on reconciliations see paragraphs 82 to 87 below);
  - f. the records maintained comply with the guidance given by the SFC;
  - g. to provide third party evidence of client balances (except settlement balances), the auditor may consider obtaining direct confirmation from clients; in practice, this may be conveniently combined with testing the accuracy of statements of their securities sent to clients; and
  - h. circularization of account balances and scheme money (where applicable) in accordance with paragraphs 72 to 80 in Part II of this PN.

**Reconciliations**

82. The requirement to carry out reconciliations is set out in the Keeping of Records Rules.

83. A regulated entity that holds client money and/or scheme money or controls a relevant CIS account is required to reconcile each month any differences during that month in its balances or positions with any of its associated entities and other parties, including:
- a. recognised exchange companies;
  - b. clearing houses;
  - c. other intermediaries;
  - d. custodians; and
  - e. banks,

and show how such differences were resolved.

*Control objectives – Reconciliation*

84. The main factors that will be considered are:
- a. client/trust money or scheme money per the segregated account, as recorded by the regulated entity, and the scheme money per the relevant CIS account, as recorded by relevant CIS that is constituted in the form of an open-ended fund company or any other corporate form, are reconciled with the total of balances recorded as due to each client (except for Type 13 regulated activity) or each relevant CIS (for Type 13 regulated activity) at least each month;
  - b. balance of each such segregated account or relevant CIS account, as recorded by the regulated entity and relevant CIS account, as recorded by the relevant CIS that is constituted in the form of an open-ended fund company or any other corporate form, are reconciled with the relevant bank statements;
  - c. the reconciliations are properly prepared and adequate explanations given for reconciling items, which would be cleared without delay; and
  - d. records are retained of the dates and results of the reconciliations.

*Evidence – Reconciliation*

85. The main factors that will be considered are:
- a. an up-to-date list of the segregated accounts or relevant CIS accounts held that agrees with the segregated accounts or relevant CIS accounts being reconciled;
  - b. evidence of an independent preparation and review of these reconciliations; and
  - c. reconciliations being carried out regularly over the financial year under review.
86. The auditor carries out normal audit tests on bank reconciliations. Particular attention will be paid to reconciling items, ensuring that outstanding and uncleared items are properly identified and are duly cleared shortly after the reconciliation. As part of its substantive testing, the auditor examines and where appropriate obtain direct confirmation of bank balances from each bank concerned.
87. The regulated entity would also reconcile its segregated bank accounts and relevant CIS accounts held on behalf of the relevant CIS that is constituted in the form of an open-ended fund company or any other corporate form as often as necessary but at least once every month. Some regulated entities need to reconcile segregated bank accounts and relevant CIS accounts daily if the volume of transactions is high.

## C. NO CLIENT ASSETS<sup>2</sup>

88. The auditor must be alert to a situation where a licensed corporation is not permitted under its licensing condition to hold client assets or does not, as a matter of policy, hold client assets. Where this is the case, the licensed corporation would have systems in place to avoid receiving and holding client assets.
89. Although the auditor is not required to give the SFC independent assurance that the licensed corporation has not administered or held client assets, it still considers carrying out the following procedures:
- a. enquire as to what arrangements a licensed corporation has in place to ensure that relevant staff are aware of what constitutes client assets. This could be documented in a procedural manual or internal memorandum and would outline the procedures to be followed if client assets are identified;
  - b. enquire as to how settlements are effected on behalf of clients (reference will be made to client documentation and payment instructions on contract notes or statements);
  - c. review the cash book in order to confirm that receipts and payments in the cash book only relate to the licensed corporation's own money and that no client money is being received or held;
  - d. review the licensed corporation's client files to see whether they provide any indication that it has held client assets in order to undertake a particular transaction;
  - e. review client agreements for statements of how custody is to be operated; as a corollary, review the agreements with any custodians used and the counterparty files (i.e. the documentation which supports the securities transactions) for correspondence on settlement procedures to ensure that there is no evidence that the licensed corporation has controlled or held client assets;
  - f. ascertain whether a system of review exists to ensure that client assets are not administered or held. This could constitute periodic review by the internal auditor or compliance officer and encompasses substantive review of the licensed corporation's bank and custodian accounts and client agreements;
  - g. enquire as to details of any client assets the licensed corporation has received and the action taken; and
  - h. review the complaints log for any indication that the licensed corporation has held client assets.

The auditor should be alert to findings from the above procedures which may indicate that the licensed corporation has held client assets. In such circumstances, the auditor should refer to the guidance in paragraph 74 in Part II of this PN and consider to send confirmations to the licensed corporation's clients. In addition, the auditor should refer to the guidance in Part V of this PN and consider to report to the SFC.

90. The auditor will consider obtaining written representations from management that the licensed corporation has not breached any rules relating to the client assets during the financial year under review.

---

<sup>2</sup> In general, this section is not applicable to a licensed corporation licensed for Type 13 regulated activity.

## APPENDIX 2 - EXAMPLES OF AUDITOR'S REPORTS

### Example 1 - auditor's report on financial statements - regulated entity

For purposes of this illustrative auditor's report, the following circumstances are assumed:

- Audit of a complete set of financial statements of an entity other than a listed entity<sup>1</sup> incorporated in Hong Kong using Hong Kong Financial Reporting Standards (HKFRSs). The audit is not a group audit (i.e., HKSA 600 (Revised)<sup>2</sup> does not apply).
- The financial statements are prepared by the directors of the entity in accordance with HKFRSs (a general purpose framework<sup>3</sup>).
- The terms of the audit engagement reflect the description of the directors' responsibility for the financial statements in HKSA 210.
- The auditor has concluded an unmodified (i.e., "clean") opinion is appropriate based on the audit evidence obtained.
- The relevant ethical requirements that apply to the audit are those of the Hong Kong Institute of Certified Public Accountants' *Code of Ethics for Professional Accountants*.
- Based on the audit evidence obtained, the auditor has concluded that a material uncertainty does not exist related to events or conditions that may cast significant doubt on the entity's ability to continue as a going concern in accordance with HKSA 570 (Revised).
- The auditor is not required, and has otherwise not decided, to communicate key audit matters in accordance with HKSA 701<sup>4</sup>.
- The auditor has obtained all of the other information<sup>5</sup> prior to the date of the auditor's report and has not identified a material misstatement of the other information.
- Those responsible for oversight of the financial statements differ from those responsible for the preparation of the financial statements.
- In addition to the audit of the financial statements, the auditor has other reporting responsibilities required under the Securities and Futures (Keeping of Records) Rules and Securities and Futures (Accounts and Audit) Rules of the Securities and Futures Ordinance in addition to the Companies Ordinance.

#### INDEPENDENT AUDITOR'S REPORT

To the Members of ABC Securities Limited  
(incorporated in Hong Kong with limited liability)<sup>6</sup>

#### Report on the Audit of the Financial Statements

##### Opinion

We have audited the financial statements of ABC Securities Limited ("the Company") set out on pages ..... to..... , which comprise the statement of financial position as at 31 December 20X1,<sup>7</sup> and

<sup>1</sup> See HKSA 700 (Revised), *Forming an Opinion and Reporting on Financial Statements* for illustrations of auditor's reports for listed entities.

<sup>2</sup> HKSA 600 (Revised), *Special Considerations—Audits of Group Financial Statements (Including the Work of Component Auditors)*

<sup>3</sup> HKSA 700 (Revised), *Forming an Opinion and Reporting on Financial Statements*, paragraph 7(b)

<sup>4</sup> HKSA 701, *Communicating Key Audit Matters in the Independent Auditor's Report*

<sup>5</sup> HKSA 720 (Revised), *The Auditor's Responsibilities Relating to Other Information*, paragraph 12(c)

<sup>6</sup> In Hong Kong, it is a common practice to disclose the place of incorporation of the company.

<sup>7</sup> For cessation audits (see paragraph 127), reference to the financial year end date in this example report should be changed to the cessation date of the licensed corporation's regulated activities.

[the statement of profit or loss and] <sup>8</sup> the statement of profit or loss and other comprehensive income, statement of changes in equity and statement of cash flows for the year then ended, and notes to the financial statements, including material accounting policy information.

In our opinion, the financial statements give a true and fair view of the financial position of the Company as at 31 December 20X1, and of its financial performance and its cash flows for the year then ended in accordance with Hong Kong Financial Reporting Standards (“HKFRSs”) issued by the Hong Kong Institute of Certified Public Accountants (“HKICPA”) and have been properly prepared in compliance with the Companies Ordinance.

### **Basis for Opinion**

We conducted our audit in accordance with Hong Kong Standards on Auditing (“HKSA”) and with reference to Practice Note 820 (Revised), *The Audit of Licensed Corporations and Associated Entities of Intermediaries* issued by the HKICPA. Our responsibilities under those standards are further described in the Auditor’s Responsibilities for the Audit of the Financial Statements section of our report. We are independent of the Company in accordance with the HKICPA’s *Code of Ethics for Professional Accountants* (“the Code”), and we have fulfilled our other ethical responsibilities in accordance with the Code. We believe that the audit evidence we have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our opinion.

### **Other Information [or another title if appropriate such as “Information Other than the Financial Statements and Auditor’s Report Thereon”]**

*[Reporting in accordance with the reporting requirements in HKSA 720 (Revised), The Auditor’s Responsibilities Relating to Other Information – see Illustration 1 in Appendix 2 of HKSA 720 (Revised).]*

### **Responsibilities of Directors and Those Charged with Governance for the Financial Statements<sup>9</sup>**

The directors are responsible for the preparation of financial statements that give a true and fair view in accordance with HKFRSs issued by the HKICPA and the Companies Ordinance, and for such internal control as the directors determine is necessary to enable the preparation of financial statements that are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error.

In preparing the financial statements, the directors are responsible for assessing the Company’s ability to continue as a going concern, disclosing, as applicable, matters related to going concern and using the going concern basis of accounting unless the directors either intend to liquidate the Company or to cease operations, or have no realistic alternative but to do so.

In addition, the directors are required to ensure that the financial statements are in accordance with the records kept under the Securities and Futures (Keeping of Records) Rules and satisfy the requirements of the Securities and Futures (Accounts and Audit) Rules.

Those charged with governance are responsible for overseeing the Company’s financial reporting process.

<sup>8</sup> HKAS 1 allows entities to present comprehensive income using either a one statement approach (i.e. a single “statement of profit or loss and other comprehensive income”) or a two-statement approach (i.e. a “statement of profit or loss” together with a “statement of profit or loss and other comprehensive income”). Different terms may be used as long as they are consistent with the titles of the corresponding statements.

<sup>9</sup> Throughout the illustrative auditor’s reports, the terms directors and those charged with governance may need to be replaced by another term that is appropriate in the context of the legal framework in the particular jurisdiction.

## Auditor's Responsibilities for the Audit of the Financial Statements

Our objectives are to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements as a whole are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error, and to issue an auditor's report that includes our opinion.<sup>10</sup> Reasonable assurance is a high level of assurance, but is not a guarantee that an audit conducted in accordance with HKSA's will always detect a material misstatement when it exists. Misstatements can arise from fraud or error and are considered material if, individually or in the aggregate, they could reasonably be expected to influence the economic decisions of users taken on the basis of these financial statements. In addition, we are required to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are in accordance with the records kept under the Securities and Futures (Keeping of Records) Rules and satisfy the requirements of the Securities and Futures (Accounts and Audit) Rules.

Paragraph 41(b) of HKSA 700 (Revised) explains that the shaded material below can be located in an Appendix to the auditor's report. Paragraph 41(c) of HKSA 700 (Revised) explains that when law, regulation or HKSA's expressly permit, reference can be made to a website of an appropriate authority that contains the description of the auditor's responsibilities, rather than including this material in the auditor's report, provided that the description on the website addresses, and is not inconsistent with, the description of the auditor's responsibilities below.

As part of an audit in accordance with HKSA's, we exercise professional judgment and maintain professional skepticism throughout the audit. We also:

- Identify and assess the risks of material misstatement of the financial statements, whether due to fraud or error, design and perform audit procedures responsive to those risks, and obtain audit evidence that is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our opinion. The risk of not detecting a material misstatement resulting from fraud is higher than for one resulting from error, as fraud may involve collusion, forgery, intentional omissions, misrepresentations, or the override of internal control.
- Obtain an understanding of internal control relevant to the audit in order to design audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances, but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of the Company's internal control.
- Evaluate the appropriateness of accounting policies used and the reasonableness of accounting estimates and related disclosures made by the directors.
- Conclude on the appropriateness of the directors' use of the going concern basis of accounting and, based on the audit evidence obtained, whether a material uncertainty exists related to events or conditions that may cast significant doubt on the Company's ability to continue as a going concern. If we conclude that a material uncertainty exists, we are required to draw attention in our auditor's report to the related disclosures in the financial statements or, if such disclosures are inadequate, to modify our opinion. Our conclusions are based on the audit evidence obtained up to the date of our auditor's report. However, future events or conditions may cause the Company to cease to continue as a going concern.
- Evaluate the overall presentation, structure and content of the financial statements, including the disclosures, and whether the financial statements represent the underlying transactions and events in a manner that achieves fair presentation.

We communicate with those charged with governance regarding, among other matters, the planned scope and timing of the audit and significant audit findings, including any significant deficiencies in internal control that we identify during our audit.

<sup>10</sup> The auditors may consider it appropriate to clarify to whom they are responsible here or elsewhere in the report in accordance with their risk management policies and with reference to Professional Risk Management Bulletin No. 2 "Auditors' Duty of Care To Third Parties and The Audit Report".



**Report on matters under the Securities and Futures (Keeping of Records) Rules and Securities and Futures (Accounts and Audit) Rules of the Securities and Futures Ordinance<sup>11</sup>**

In our opinion, the financial statements are in accordance with the records kept under the Securities and Futures (Keeping of Records) Rules and satisfy the requirements of the Securities and Futures (Accounts and Audit) Rules.

XYZ & Co.

Certified Public Accountants (Practising) [or Certified Public Accountants]

[Auditor Address]

[Date]

---

<sup>11</sup> For further guidance on non-compliance with the Companies Ordinance, refer to HKSA 705 (Revised), *Modifications to the Opinion in the Independent Auditor's Report*, Appendix, Illustrations 3, 4 and 5.

## Example 2 - compliance report by the auditor - licensed corporation

### INDEPENDENT AUDITOR'S ASSURANCE REPORT ON COMPLIANCE WITH THE SECURITIES AND FUTURES ORDINANCE

To the Board of Directors of ABC Securities Limited ("the Company")

Pursuant to the Securities and Futures (Accounts and Audit) Rules and section 156 of the Securities and Futures Ordinance, we have been requested to issue this report for the year ended [*year end date*] \* for submission by the Company to the Securities and Futures Commission ("SFC").

#### *Directors' Responsibilities*

In relation to this report, the directors have a responsibility to ensure that:

- a. each of the returns as referred to in section 3(1)(b)\* of the Securities and Futures (Accounts and Audit) Rules made up to [*year end date*] is correctly compiled from the records of the Company;
- b.# the Company has systems of control in place that are adequate to ensure compliance with:
  - i. sections [4, 5, 6, 8(4), 10]<sup>1</sup> [10B, 10C, 10D]<sup>2</sup> and 11 of the Securities and Futures (Client Money) Rules; and
  - ii. sections [4(4), 5, 10(1)]<sup>1</sup> [9B, 10A(1)]<sup>2</sup> and 12 of the Securities and Futures (Client Securities) Rules;
- c. the Company has complied with:
  - i. section [3]<sup>1</sup> [3A]<sup>2</sup> of the Securities and Futures (Keeping of Records) Rules;
  - ii.# sections [4, 5, 6, 8(4), 10]<sup>1</sup> [10B, 10C, 10D]<sup>2</sup> and 11 of the Securities and Futures (Client Money) Rules; and
  - iii.# sections [4(4), 5, 10(1)]<sup>1</sup> [9B, 10A(1)]<sup>2</sup> and 12 of the Securities and Futures (Client Securities) Rules; and
- d. the Company has complied with the Securities and Futures (Financial Resources) Rules.

#### *Our Independence and Quality Management*

We have complied with the independence and other ethical requirements of the *Code of Ethics for Professional Accountants* issued by the Hong Kong Institute of Certified Public Accountants ("HKICPA"), which is founded on fundamental principles of integrity, objectivity, professional competence and due care, confidentiality and professional behavior.

The firm applies Hong Kong Standard on Quality Management 1<sup>3</sup>, which requires the firm to design, implement and operate a system of quality management including policies or procedures regarding compliance with ethical requirements, professional standards and applicable legal and regulatory requirements.

---

<sup>1</sup> Applicable to licensed corporation other than in conducting Type 13 regulated activity.

<sup>2</sup> Applicable to licensed corporation in conducting Type 13 regulated activity.

<sup>3</sup> HKSQM 1, *Quality Management for Firms that Perform Audits or Reviews of Financial Statements, or Other Assurance or Related Services Engagements*

### *Auditor's Responsibilities*

Our responsibility is to express an independent conclusion on the Company's compliance with the relevant sections of the Securities and Futures (Accounts and Audit) Rules[, the Securities and Futures (Client Money) Rules, the Securities and Futures (Client Securities) Rules]<sup>#</sup> and the Securities and Futures (Keeping of Records) Rules as described in the directors' responsibilities section above, based on our engagement, and to report our conclusion to you.

We conducted our engagement in accordance with Hong Kong Standard on Assurance Engagements 3000 (Revised), *Assurance Engagements Other than Audits or Reviews of Historical Financial Information* and with reference to Practice Note 820 (Revised), *The Audit of Licensed Corporations and Associated Entities of Intermediaries* issued by the HKICPA. We have planned and performed our work to obtain reasonable assurance for giving conclusions 1(a) to (c) and obtain limited assurance for giving conclusion 2 below.

In relation to our conclusions 1(a) and 1(c) below, we have planned and performed such procedures as we considered necessary with reference to the procedures recommended in PN 820 (Revised), which included examining, on a test basis, evidence obtained from the Company regarding the Company's compliance with the above sections of the Securities and Futures (Accounts and Audit) Rules[, the Securities and Futures (Client Money) Rules, the Securities and Futures (Client Securities) Rules]<sup>#</sup> and the Securities and Futures (Keeping of Records) Rules.

[In relation to our conclusion 1(b) below, our work was based upon obtaining an understanding of the relevant control procedures in operation by enquiry of management and review of documents supplied to us. Our work included tests of control procedures and policies to establish whether relevant control objectives and internal control measures were designed by management for meeting the requirements specified in the document "Suggested Control Techniques and Procedures for Enhancing a Firm's Ability to Comply with the Securities and Futures (Client Securities) Rules and the Securities and Futures (Client Money) Rules" issued by the SFC.]<sup>#</sup>

In relation to our conclusion 2 below, we are not required to perform any procedures to search for instances of contravention of the Securities and Futures (Financial Resources) Rules. Our work was limited to reporting contraventions identified during the normal course of our work.

The procedures performed in a limited assurance engagement vary in nature and timing from, and are less in extent than for, a reasonable assurance engagement. Consequently, the level of assurance obtained in a limited assurance engagement is substantially lower than the assurance that would have been obtained had a reasonable assurance engagement been performed.

### *Inherent Limitations*

Systems of controls designed to address specific control objectives are subject to inherent limitations of any internal control structure, and accordingly, errors or irregularities may occur and not be detected. Such measures cannot guarantee protection against fraudulent collusion especially on the part of those holding positions of authority or trust.

### *Conclusion*<sup>4</sup>

Based on the foregoing:

1. in our opinion:
  - a. the Company has correctly compiled the attached returns as referred to in section 3(1)(b)<sup>\*</sup> of the Securities and Futures (Accounts and Audit) Rules made up to [year end date] from the records of the Company;

---

<sup>4</sup> In the circumstances where the auditor expresses a qualified conclusion or a disclaimer of conclusion or adverse conclusion, the auditor's report is to be modified accordingly as required in paragraph 69(l)(v) of HKSAE 3000 (Revised). Further guidance is set out in paragraphs 74 to 77, A183, A189 to A192 of HKSAE 3000 (Revised).

- b.# during the year ended [*year end date*], the Company had systems of control in place that were adequate to ensure compliance with:
    - i. sections [4, 5, 6, 8(4), 10]<sup>1</sup> [10B, 10C, 10D]<sup>2</sup> and 11 of the Securities and Futures (Client Money) Rules; and
    - ii.# sections [4(4), 5, 10(1)]<sup>1</sup> [9B, 10A(1)]<sup>2</sup> and 12 of the Securities and Futures (Client Securities) Rules;
  - c. during the year ended [*year end date*], the Company has complied with:
    - i. section [3]<sup>1</sup> [3A]<sup>2</sup> of the Securities and Futures (Keeping of Records) Rules;
    - ii.# sections [4, 5, 6, 8(4), 10]<sup>1</sup> [10B, 10C, 10D]<sup>2</sup> and 11 of the Securities and Futures (Client Money) Rules; and
    - iii.# sections [4(4), 5, 10(1)]<sup>1</sup> [9B, 10A(1)]<sup>2</sup> and 12 of the Securities and Futures (Client Securities) Rules; and
2. during the year ended [*year end date*], we are not aware of any instances where the Company has contravened the Securities and Futures (Financial Resources) Rules.

*Intended Users and Purpose*

This report is intended solely for submission by the Company to the SFC and is not intended to be, and should not be, used by anyone for any other purpose.

XYZ & Co.  
 Certified Public Accountants (Practising) [or Certified Public Accountants]  
 [*Auditor's Address*]  
 [*Date*]

---

#: *Not applicable where the licensed corporation does not hold client assets. The auditor should refer to paragraphs 88 to 90 of Appendix 1 for more guidance and consider carrying out the procedures set out in those paragraphs.*

Where the licensed corporation does not hold assets, the auditor is encouraged to include either one of the following paragraphs after the first paragraph of the example compliance report:

- (a) The licensed corporation is subject to the licensing condition that it shall not hold client assets. [*This paragraph is applicable to licensed corporations / associated entities who are not licensed to hold client assets.*]
- (b) The licensed corporation is permitted to hold client assets however no client assets were held during the year. [*This paragraph is applicable to licensed corporations / associated entities who are licensed to but does not hold client assets.*]

\*: *For cessation audits (see paragraph 127), reference to the financial year end date in this example report should be changed to the cessation date of the licensed corporation's regulated activities. In addition, the reference to "section 3(1)(b)" of the Securities and Futures (Accounts and Audit) Rules in this example report should be changed to "section 3(2)(b)" instead.*

### Example 3 - compliance report by the auditor - associated entity of intermediary

#### INDEPENDENT AUDITOR'S ASSURANCE REPORT ON COMPLIANCE WITH THE SECURITIES AND FUTURES ORDINANCE

To the Board of Directors of ABC Nominee Limited ("the Company")

Pursuant to the Securities and Futures (Accounts and Audit) Rules and section 156 of the Securities and Futures Ordinance, we have been requested to issue this report for the year ended [*year end date*] \* for submission by the Company to the Securities and Futures Commission ("SFC").

##### *Directors' Responsibilities*

In relation to this report, the directors have a responsibility to ensure that:

- a. the Company has systems of control in place that are adequate to ensure compliance with:
  - i.# sections [4, 5, 6, 8(4), 10]<sup>1</sup> [10B, 10C, 10D]<sup>2</sup>, 11 of the Securities and Futures (Client Money) Rules; and
  - ii. sections [4(4), 5, 10(1)]<sup>1</sup> [9B, 10A(1)]<sup>2</sup> and 12 of the Securities and Futures (Client Securities) Rules; and
- b. the Company has complied with:
  - i. section [4]<sup>1</sup> [4A]<sup>2</sup> of the Securities and Futures (Keeping of Records) Rules;
  - ii.# sections [4, 5, 6, 8(4), 10]<sup>1</sup> [10B, 10C, 10D]<sup>2</sup> and 11 of the Securities and Futures (Client Money) Rules; and
  - iii. sections [4(4), 5, 10(1)]<sup>1</sup> [9B, 10A(1)]<sup>2</sup> and 12 of the Securities and Futures (Client Securities) Rules.

##### *Our Independence and Quality Management*

We have complied with the independence and other ethical requirements of the *Code of Ethics for Professional Accountants* issued by the Hong Kong Institute of Certified Public Accountants ("HKICPA"), which is founded on fundamental principles of integrity, objectivity, professional competence and due care, confidentiality and professional behavior.

The firm applies Hong Kong Standard on Quality Management 1<sup>3</sup>, which requires the firm to design, implement and operate a system of quality management including policies or procedures regarding compliance with ethical requirements, professional standards and applicable legal and regulatory requirements.

##### *Auditor's Responsibilities*

Our responsibility is to express an independent opinion on the Company's compliance with the relevant sections of [the Securities and Futures (Client Money) Rules,]<sup>#</sup> the Securities and Futures (Client Securities) Rules and the Securities and Futures (Keeping of Records) Rules as described in the directors' responsibilities section above, based on our engagement, and to report our opinion to you.

---

<sup>1</sup> Applicable to associated entity of intermediary licensed or registered for other than Type 13 regulated activity.

<sup>2</sup> Applicable to associated entity of intermediary licensed or registered for Type 13 regulated activity.

<sup>3</sup> HKSQM 1, *Quality Management for Firms that Perform Audits or Reviews of Financial Statements, or Other Assurance or Related Services Engagements*

We conducted our engagement in accordance with Hong Kong Standard on Assurance Engagements 3000 (Revised), *Assurance Engagements Other than Audits or Reviews of Historical Financial Information* and with reference to Practice Note 820 (Revised), *The Audit of Licensed Corporations and Associated Entities of Intermediaries* issued by the HKICPA. We have planned and performed our work to obtain reasonable assurance for giving our opinion below.

In relation to our opinion (a) below, our work was based upon obtaining an understanding of the relevant control procedures in operation by enquiry of management and review of documents supplied to us. Our work included tests of control procedures and policies to establish whether relevant control objectives and internal control measures were designed by management for meeting the requirements specified in the document “Suggested Control Techniques and Procedures for Enhancing a Firm’s Ability to Comply with the Securities and Futures (Client Securities) Rules and the Securities and Futures (Client Money) Rules” issued by the SFC.

In relation to our opinion (b) below, we have planned and performed such procedures as we considered necessary with reference to the procedures recommended in PN 820 (Revised), which included examining, on a test basis, evidence obtained from the Company regarding the Company’s compliance with the above sections of [the Securities and Futures (Client Money) Rules,]<sup>#</sup> the Securities and Futures (Client Securities) Rules and the Securities and Futures (Keeping of Records) Rules.

We believe that the evidence we have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our opinion.

#### *Inherent Limitations*

Systems of controls designed to address specific control objectives are subject to inherent limitations of any internal control structure, and accordingly, errors or irregularities may occur and not be detected. Such measures cannot guarantee protection against fraudulent collusion especially on the part of those holding positions of authority or trust.

#### *Opinion*<sup>4</sup>

Based on the foregoing, in our opinion:

- a. during the year ended [*year end date*], the Company had systems of control in place that were adequate to ensure compliance with:
  - i.<sup>#</sup> sections [4, 5, 6, 8(4), 10]<sup>1</sup> [10B, 10C, 10D]<sup>2</sup>, 11 of the Securities and Futures (Client Money) Rules; and
  - ii. sections [4(4), 5, 10(1)]<sup>1</sup> [9B, 10A(1)]<sup>2</sup> and 12 of the Securities and Futures (Client Securities) Rules; and
- b. during the year ended [*year end date*], the Company has complied with:
  - i. section [4]<sup>1</sup> [4A]<sup>2</sup> of the Securities and Futures (Keeping of Records) Rules;
  - ii.<sup>#</sup> sections [4, 5, 6, 8(4), 10]<sup>1</sup> [10B, 10C, 10D]<sup>2</sup> and 11 of the Securities and Futures (Client Money) Rules; and
  - iii. sections [4(4), 5, 10(1)]<sup>1</sup> [9B, 10A(1)]<sup>2</sup> and 12 of the Securities and Futures (Client Securities) Rules.

#### *Intended Users and Purpose*

<sup>4</sup> In the circumstances where the auditor expresses a qualified conclusion or a disclaimer of conclusion or adverse conclusion, the auditor’s report is to be modified accordingly as required in paragraph 69(I)(v) of HKSAA 3000 (Revised). Further guidance is set out in paragraphs 74 to 77, A183, A189 to A192 of HKSAA 3000 (Revised).

This report is intended solely for submission by the Company to the SFC and is not intended to be, and should not be, used by anyone for any other purpose.

XYZ & Co.  
Certified Public Accountants (Practising) [or Certified Public Accountants]  
[Auditor's Address]  
[Date]

---

#: *Not applicable in the case of an associated entity of a registered institution.*

\*: *For cessation audits (see paragraph 127), reference to the financial year end date in this example report should be changed to the date that the entity ceases to be an associated entity.*

## Example 4 – example modified auditor’s assurance reports

*The following examples of modified reports are for guidance only and are not intended to be exhaustive or applicable to all situations. They are based on Examples 2 and 3 in Appendix 2.*

### (a) Qualified conclusion for Example 2 – compliance report by the auditor – licensed corporation

...

#### *Basis for Qualified Conclusion*

In respect of conclusion 1(b) below, we identified exception[s] to the Company’s systems of control in place over compliance with [insert relevant sections of the Securities and Futures (Client Money) Rules/the Securities and Futures (Client Securities) Rules] as set out in the appendix to this report.

In respect of conclusion 1(c) below, we identified the non-compliance with [insert relevant sections of the relevant rules] as set out in the appendix to this report.

#### *Qualified Conclusion*

Based on the foregoing,

1. in our opinion:

...

b. except for the effect of the matter described in the Basis for Qualified Conclusion section of our report, during the year ended [year end date], the Company had systems of control in place that were adequate to ensure compliance with:

- i. sections [4, 5, 6, 8(4), 10]<sup>1</sup>[10B, 10C, 10D]<sup>2</sup>, 11 of the Securities and Futures (Client Money) Rules; and
- ii. sections [4(4), 5, 10(1)]<sup>1</sup> [9B, 10A(1)]<sup>2</sup> and 12 of the Securities and Futures (Client Securities) Rules;

c. except for the effect of the matter described in the Basis for Qualified Conclusion section of our report, during the year ended [year end date], the Company has complied with:

- i. section [3]<sup>1</sup> [3A]<sup>2</sup> of the Securities and Futures (Keeping of Records) Rules;
- ii. sections [4, 5, 6, 8(4), 10]<sup>1</sup> [10B, 10C, 10D]<sup>2</sup> and 11 of the Securities and Futures (Client Money) Rules; and
- iii. sections [4(4), 5, 10(1)]<sup>1</sup> [9B, 10A(1)]<sup>2</sup> and 12 of the Securities and Futures (Client Securities) Rules.

<sup>1</sup> Applicable to licensed corporation or associated entity of intermediary other than in conducting Type 13 regulated activity.

<sup>2</sup> Applicable to licensed corporation or associated entity of intermediary in conducting Type 13 regulated activity.



**(b) Qualified opinion for Example 3 – compliance report by the auditor – associated entity of intermediary**

...

*Auditor's Responsibilities*

...

We believe that the evidence we have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our qualified opinion.

*Basis for Qualified Opinion*

In respect of opinion (b) below, we identified the non-compliance with [insert relevant sections of the relevant rules] as set out in the appendix to this report.

*Qualified Opinion*

Based on the foregoing, in our opinion:

...

- b. except for the effect of the matter described in the Basis for Qualified Opinion section of our report, during the year ended [*year end date*], the Company has complied with:
  - i. section [4]<sup>1</sup> [4A]<sup>2</sup> of the Securities and Futures (Keeping of Records) Rules;
  - ii. sections [4, 5, 6, 8(4), 10]<sup>1</sup> [10B, 10C, 10D]<sup>2</sup> and 11 of the Securities and Futures (Client Money) Rules; and
  - iii. sections [4(4), 5, 10(1)]<sup>1</sup> [9B, 10A(1)]<sup>2</sup> and 12 of the Securities and Futures (Client Securities) Rules.

### APPENDIX 3 - EXAMPLE OF MANAGEMENT REPRESENTATION LETTER

The following illustrative letter includes additional written representations that the auditor of a regulated entity would also consider. It should be read in conjunction with the examples of representations given in HKSA 580 “Written Representations” and will need to be modified according to the requirements and circumstances of the individual regulated entity.

In situations where the compliance report is being issued after the issuance of the auditor’s report on the financial statements, it may be necessary to request an updated written representation letter for management to reaffirm that the written representations it previously made with respect to the audit of the financial statements remain appropriate.<sup>1</sup>

[Regulated entity’s letterhead]

[Audit Firm]

[Address]

[Date of Auditor’s report]

(To Auditor)

...

#### *Information Provided*

...

- We have disclosed to you all known instances of non-compliance or suspected non-compliance with laws and regulations whose effects should be considered when preparing the financial statements and relevant returns for your audit for the year ended [year end date] and up to the date of this letter.
- All the returns provided to you for the purpose of this engagement are the ones submitted to the Securities and Futures Commission (“SFC”).
- All transactions undertaken by the Company have been properly reflected and recorded in the accounting and non-accounting records, such records properly reflect the true nature of all transactions.

#### *Regulatory*

- All complaints received from customers have been notified to the relevant personnel within the Company and have been drawn to your attention.
- We have acknowledged and fulfilled our responsibilities for establishing and maintaining adequate accounting and non-accounting records and systems of control in accordance with the rules and regulations of SFC and other relevant laws, codes and guidelines at all times.
- We acknowledge our responsibility for preparing the [Account Disclosure Document (the “ADD”) for Licensed Corporation/ Analysis of Client Assets for Associated Entity]<sup>2</sup> for the purposes of compliance with the requirements of section 156(1)(a) of the Securities and Futures Ordinance (the “SFO”) as amplified in section [3(1)/ 3(3)]<sup>2</sup> of the Securities and Futures (Accounts and Audit) Rules.

---

<sup>1</sup> The following paragraph may be considered to add in the representation letter:

- There is no change to the terms being represented in the letter of representation dated [date of the auditor’s report on the financial statements], which has been provided to you, up to the date of this letter. [if there are changes, please specify]

<sup>2</sup> Delete as appropriate.

- [During the year ended [year end date], the Company has systems of control in place that are adequate to ensure compliance with sections 4, 5, 6, 8(4), 10 and 11 of the Securities and Futures (Client Money) Rules and sections 4(4), 5, 10(1) and 12 of the Securities and Futures (Client Securities) Rules.]<sup>3,4</sup> [If exception noted, please specify]
- [During the year ended [year end date], the Company has systems of control in place that are adequate to ensure compliance with sections 10B, 10C, 10D and 11 of the Securities and Futures (Client Money) Rules and sections 9B, 10A(1) and 12 of the Securities and Futures (Client Securities) Rules.]<sup>3,5</sup> [If exception noted, please specify]
- [During the year ended [year end date], the Company has complied with section [3]<sup>6</sup> [4]<sup>7</sup> of the Securities and Futures (Keeping of Records) Rules, [sections 4, 5, 6, 8(4), 10 and 11 of the Securities and Futures (Client Money) Rules, sections 4(4), 5, 10(1) and 12 of the Securities and Futures (Client Securities) Rules]<sup>3,4</sup> and [the Securities and Futures (Financial Resources) Rules]<sup>6</sup>. [If exception noted, please specify]
- During the year ended [year end date], the Company has complied with section [3A]<sup>8</sup> [4A]<sup>9</sup> of the Securities and Futures (Keeping of Records) Rules, [sections 10B, 10C, 10D and 11 of the Securities and Futures (Client Money) Rules, sections 9B, 10A(1) and 12 of the Securities and Futures (Client Securities) Rules]<sup>3,5</sup> and [the Securities and Futures (Financial Resources) Rules]<sup>8</sup>. [If exception noted, please specify]
- [During the year ended [year end date], the Company has complied with the relevant capital requirements under the Securities and Futures (Financial Resources) Rules]<sup>6, 8</sup>. [If exception noted, please specify]
- [Each of the financial returns as referred to in section 3(1)(b) of the Securities and Futures (Accounts and Audit) Rules as at [year end date] is correctly compiled from the accounting and non-accounting records of the Company and prepared in accordance with the Securities and Futures (Financial Resources) Rules]<sup>6, 8</sup>.
- We are not aware of any matters which adversely affect the financial position of the Company to a material extent and to which your attention should be drawn for the year ended [year end date] and up to the date of this letter.
- [We have read the draft auditor's compliance report and have agreed with the facts and statements set out in the draft report in respect of your engagement.] [If there is disagreement, please specify]
- [We confirm that no client assets as defined in section 1 in Schedule 1 of the SFO have been administered, held, handled or processed by us, our staff or any company representative or appointed representative during the year.]<sup>10</sup>

---

<sup>3</sup> Not applicable where the regulated entity does not hold client assets.  
<sup>4</sup> Applicable to regulated entity other than in conducting Type 13 regulated activity.  
<sup>5</sup> Applicable to regulated entity in conducting Type 13 regulated activity.  
<sup>6</sup> Applicable to licensed corporation other than in conducting Type 13 regulated activity.  
<sup>7</sup> Applicable to associated entity of intermediary other than in conducting Type 13 regulated activity.  
<sup>8</sup> Applicable to licensed corporation in conducting Type 13 regulated activity.  
<sup>9</sup> Applicable to associated entity of intermediary in conducting Type 13 regulated activity.  
<sup>10</sup> Not applicable where the regulated entity holds client assets as defined in section 1 in Schedule 1 of the SFO.

- *[We have provided full details to you of all correspondence and notes of meetings with the SFC and other regulatory authorities for the year ended [year end date] and up to the date of this letter.]*<sup>11</sup>

Or

*["We have provided full details to you of all correspondence and notes of meetings with the SFC and other regulatory authorities (except for correspondence and notes of meetings with the SFC subject to section 378 of the SFO other than supervisory information, records or documents as stated in frequently-asked questions issued by SFC for the application of section 378 of the SFO to disclosure of supervisory information by licensed corporation on 18 December 2018 where no consent has been given by the SFC for us to disclose such correspondence and notes of meetings with the SFC to you, if applicable) for the year ended [year end date] and up to the date of this letter.]*<sup>12</sup>

There are no regulatory matters including those which are subject to section 378 of the SFO, if any, which may adversely affect the financial position and regulatory compliance of the Company and to which your attention should be drawn for the year ended [year end date] and up to the date of this letter.

---

<sup>11</sup> Applicable to the following circumstances:

- (i) the auditor is not aware of any correspondence between the regulated entity and the SFC that is subject to section 378 of the SFO; or
- (ii) the auditor is aware of correspondence between the regulated entity and the SFC that is subject to section 378 of the SFO but is related to the Supervisory Information only for which SFC's consent is not required; or
- (iii) the auditor is aware of correspondence other than the Supervisory Information between the regulated entity and the SFC that is subject to section 378 of the SFO and has obtained all related information for assessment after obtaining SFC's consent.

<sup>12</sup> Applicable if the auditor is aware of correspondence other than the Supervisory Information between the regulated entity and the SFC that are subject to section 378 of the SFO but the regulated entity has not obtained consent from the SFC to disclose such correspondence to the auditor:

PN 820 (Revised)  
Issued December 2014; revised March 2016,  
October 2016, December 2020, December 2021,  
May 2022, January 2024, June 2024\*, [ ] 2024\*

Effective for audits of financial statements for periods  
~~beginning ending~~ on or after 31 December 2024~~15 December 2023~~

*Practice Note 820 (Revised)*

---

# The Audit of Licensed Corporations and Associated Entities of Intermediaries

~~\* PN 820 (Revised) has been updated for conforming amendments as a result of HKSA 600 (Revised), *Special Considerations—Audits of Group Financial Statements (Including the Work of Component Auditors)*. These amendments became effective at the same time as HKSA 600 (Revised) for audits of financial statements for periods beginning on or after 15 December 2023.~~

\* PN 820 (Revised) has been updated for amendments made to the Securities and Futures Ordinance and the subsidiary legislation as a result of the implementation of the new regulated activity, Type 13 (“RA 13”). The RA 13 regime is effective from 2 October 2024 and the first auditor’s reporting will be for the year ending 31 December 2024.



Hong Kong Institute of  
**Certified Public Accountants**  
香港會計師公會

**COPYRIGHT**

Copyright © 2024 Hong Kong Institute of Certified Public Accountants

This Practice Note contains Hong Kong Institute of Certified Public Accountants copyright material. Reproduction in unaltered form (retaining this notice) is permitted for personal and noncommercial use subject to the inclusion of an acknowledgment of the source. Requests and inquiries concerning reproduction and rights for commercial purposes should be addressed to Hong Kong Institute of Certified Public Accountants, 37/F., Wu Chung House, 213 Queen's Road East, Wanchai, Hong Kong.

**PRACTICE NOTE  
820 (REVISED)  
THE AUDIT OF LICENSED CORPORATIONS AND  
ASSOCIATED ENTITIES OF INTERMEDIARIES**

*(Effective for ~~engagements beginning audits of financial statements for periods ending on or after 4531~~  
December ~~2022~~2024)*

<i>Contents</i>	<i>Paragraphs</i>
<b><u>PART I – GENERAL</u></b>	
Introduction	1 - 7
Definitions	8
Legislation and regulatory requirements	9 - <del>25</del> <u>26</u>
<b><u>PART II - THE AUDIT OF FINANCIAL STATEMENTS</u></b>	
Introduction	<del>26</del> <u>27</u>
Agreeing the terms of audit engagement	<del>27 – 28</del> - <u>29</u>
Audit planning	<del>29 – 45</del> <u>30 - 46</u>
Consideration of laws and regulations	<del>46 – 61</del> <u>47 - 62</u>
Use of information technology	<del>62 – 67</del> <u>63 - 68</u>
Using a service organization	<del>68 – 70</del> <u>69 - 71</u>
Specific application guidance on client assets	<del>71 – 79</del> <u>72 - 80</u>
Subsequent events	<del>80</del> <u>81</u>
Going concern	<del>81 – 83</del> <u>82 - 84</u>
Written representations	<del>84</del> <u>85</u>
<b><u>PART III - AUDITOR’S REPORTS UNDER THE SECURITIES AND FUTURES (ACCOUNTS AND AUDIT) RULES</u></b>	
Introduction	<del>85</del> <u>86</u>
Management’s responsibilities	<del>86 – 89</del> <u>87 - 90</u>
Auditor’s responsibilities and reporting requirements	<del>90 – 98</del> <u>91 - 99</u>
Guidance on the reporting requirements of the Compliance Report	<del>99 – 121</del> <u>100 - 122</u>

**PART IV - OTHER REPORTING CONSIDERATIONS**

Audit Questionnaire ~~122~~ 123 - 125

Account Disclosure Document ~~125~~ 126

Cessation of Activities ~~126~~ 127 - 128

**PART V - COMMUNICATIONS BETWEEN THE AUDITOR AND THE SECURITIES AND FUTURES COMMISSION**

Introduction ~~128~~ 129 - 133

The auditor to lodge report with the SFC in certain cases ~~133~~ 134 - 143

Other communications by the auditor ~~143~~ 144 - 166

The auditor's duty of secrecy ~~166~~ 167 - 172

Communications by the SFC to the auditor under section 378(3)(h) of the SFO ~~172~~ 173 - 175

**APPENDIX 1 - CLIENT ASSETS**

A. CLIENT SECURITIES AND SCHEME SECURITIES

B. CLIENT MONEY AND SCHEME MONEY

C. NO CLIENT ASSETS

**APPENDIX 2 - EXAMPLES OF AUDITOR'S REPORTS**

Example 1 - auditor's report on financial statements - regulated entity

Example 2 - compliance report by the auditor - licensed corporation

Example 3 - compliance report by the auditor - associated entity of intermediary

Example 4 – example modified auditor's assurance reports

**APPENDIX 3 – EXAMPLE OF MANAGEMENT REPRESENTATION LETTER**

Practice Note (PN) 820 (Revised), *The Audit of Licensed Corporations and Associated Entities of Intermediaries* should be read in the context of the *Preface to the Hong Kong Quality Management, Auditing, Review, Other Assurance, and Related Services Pronouncements*.



**PRACTICE NOTE  
820 (REVISED)  
THE AUDIT OF LICENSED CORPORATIONS AND  
ASSOCIATED ENTITIES OF INTERMEDIARIES**

*The purpose of Practice Notes issued by the Hong Kong Institute of Certified Public Accountants (HKICPA) is to assist the auditor in applying Hong Kong Engagement Standards of general application to particular circumstances and industries.*

*Practice Notes are persuasive rather than prescriptive. However they are indicative of good practice and have similar status to the explanatory material in Hong Kong Engagement Standards. This Practice Note provides guidance to assist the auditor to fulfill the objectives of the engagement. The auditor should be prepared to explain departures when called upon to do so.*

**PART I – GENERAL**

**Introduction**

1. The purpose of this Practice Note (PN) is to assist the auditor to develop an approach to the audit of the financial statements of licensed corporations and associated entities of intermediaries. This is dealt with in Part II of this PN.
2. This PN also provides guidance on the auditor's other reporting responsibilities under the Securities and Futures Ordinance (SFO) which are set out in the Securities and Futures (Accounts and Audit) Rules. This is dealt with in Part III of this PN.
3. Guidance on the completion of the Securities and Futures Commission's (SFC's) Audit Questionnaire by the auditor and other reporting considerations are set out in Part IV of this PN.
4. The auditor is entitled under the SFO to report directly to the SFC in exceptional circumstances and, in some cases, has a duty to do so. Guidance on such ad hoc reporting is set out in Part V of this PN.
5. This PN has been prepared in consultation with the SFC.
6. This PN is based on the SFO in effect as at ~~1 January 2020~~ October 2024, and the subsidiary legislation, codes and guidelines issued by the SFC up to ~~1 January 2020~~ October 2024. Every care has been taken in its preparation. However, the legislation itself is the sole authority of the law and this PN should be used in conjunction with the legislation.
7. It should be borne in mind that certain expressions used in the SFO may be matters for legal interpretation. There may, therefore, be circumstances in which, notwithstanding the guidance given in this PN, the auditor will wish to seek legal advice.

## Definitions

8. The definitions used in this PN are:

a. *Associated entity*

A company that is in a controlling entity relationship with an intermediary and receives or holds in Hong Kong client assets of the intermediary.

b. *Client assets*

As defined in section 1 in Schedule 1 of the SFO.

c. *Client asset rules*

Securities and Futures (Client Money) Rules and Securities and Futures (Client Securities) Rules.

d. *Codes and guidelines*

Codes and guidelines issued by the SFC under the SFO.

e. *Control Techniques for Client Asset Rules*

“Suggested Control Techniques and Procedures for Enhancing a Firm’s Ability to Comply with the Securities and Futures (Client Securities) Rules and the Securities and Futures (Client Money) Rules” issued by the SFC.

f. *FRR*

Securities and Futures (Financial Resources) Rules.

g. *Intermediary*

A licensed corporation or a registered institution.

h. *Internal Control Guidelines*

“Management, Supervision and Internal Control Guidelines for Persons Licensed by or Registered with the Securities and Futures Commission” issued by the SFC.

i. *Licensed corporation*

A corporation which is granted a licence by the SFC under Part V of the SFO for a regulated activity.

j. *Liquid assets*

Such assets as are prescribed in Division 3 of Part 4 of the FRR.

k. *Liquid capital*

The amount by which liquid assets exceeds ranking liabilities.

l. *Open-ended fund company*

As defined in Section 112A of the SFO.

m. *Ranking liabilities*

The amounts required under Division 4 of Part 4 of the FRR.

~~m.~~  
n. *Registered institution*

An authorized financial institution registered under Part V of the SFO.

~~no.~~ *Regulated activities*

As prescribed in Schedule 5 of the SFO.

~~op.~~ *Regulated entity*

A licensed corporation or an associated entity of an intermediary.

oq. *Relevant Collective Investment Scheme ("Relevant CIS")*

As defined in Part 2 of Schedule 5 of the SFO.

r. *Relevant CIS account*

As defined in section 10A of the Securities and Futures (Client Money) Rules.

s. *Relevant CIS property*

As defined in Part 2 of Schedule 5 of the SFO.

t. *Reportable matter*

A matter that in the opinion of the person acting as an auditor within the meaning of section 157(1)(a) of the SFO –

- (a) in the case of a licensed corporation –
  - (i) constitutes on the part of the licensed corporation or any of its associated entities a failure to comply with any prescribed requirement;
  - (ii) adversely affects to a material extent the financial position of the licensed corporation or any of its associated entities; or
  - (iii) constitutes on the part of the licensed corporation a failure to comply with section 146 or with all or any of the requirements of the financial resources rules that apply to it; or
- (b) in the case of an associated entity of an intermediary –
  - (i) constitutes on the part of the associated entity a failure to comply with any prescribed requirement; or
  - (ii) where the associated entity is not an authorized financial institution, adversely affects to a material extent the financial position of the associated entity.

qu. *Scheme documents*

As defined in Part 2 of Schedule 5 to the SFO.

v. *Scheme assets*

As defined in section 2 of the Securities and Futures (Keeping of Records) Rules.

w. *Scheme money*

As defined in section 10A of the Securities and Futures (Client Money) Rules where the Securities and Futures (Client Money) Rules apply, or as defined in section 2 of the Securities and Futures (Keeping of Records) Rules, the Securities and Futures (Accounts and Audit) Rules or the Securities and Futures (Financial Resources) Rules, when these rules apply.

x. Scheme securities

As defined in section 2 of the Securities and Futures (Client Securities) Rules where the Securities and Futures (Client Securities) Rules apply, or as defined in section 2 of the Securities and Futures (Keeping of Records) Rules and the Securities and Futures (Accounts and Audit) Rules, when these rules apply.

y. Segregated account

A segregated account established and maintained under section 4(1) and (2) or, where Part 3 of these Rules applies, section 10B(1), (2), (3) and (4) of the Securities and Futures (Client Money) Rules or under section 5(1) and (2), section 9B of the Securities and Futures (Client Securities) Rules.

yz. SFC

Securities and Futures Commission.

s. aa. SFO

Securities and Futures Ordinance.

†  
ab. Sub-fund

As defined in section 10A of the Securities and Futures (Client Money Rules).

ac. Systems of control

The internal controls ~~over and~~ trading, accounting, settlement ~~and~~ stock holding systems and holding systems for scheme securities that a licensed corporation or an associated entity of an intermediary has implemented to ensure its compliance with the applicable provisions of the client asset rules SFO and any rules made under the SFO.

ad. Written instruction

As defined in section 9C of the Securities and Futures (Client Securities) Rules and section 10A of the Securities and Futures (Client Money) Rules.

## Legislation and regulatory requirements

### The SFO

9. Under the licensing and registration regime of the SFO, any business entity which carries on or holds itself out as carrying on a business in a regulated activity in Hong Kong is required to be licensed by or registered with the SFC. It is a serious offence to act as an intermediary in Hong Kong without the appropriate licence or registration.
10. The SFC administers the regulation of the regulated activities and assumes the duties of front-line regulator of licensed corporations. It also applies certain requirements to associated entities of intermediaries in relation to their receipt and holding of client assets- (including scheme assets). The SFC is also responsible for all investigations and disciplinary matters under the SFO, subsidiary legislation, codes and guidelines.
11. Regulated entities must observe at all times all the provisions of the SFO, subsidiary legislation, codes and guidelines. In association with these requirements, regulated entities must file audited annual financial statements within four months of the financial year end to the SFC.
12. The SFO is designed to protect investors and, therefore, is concerned with ensuring that regulated activities in Hong Kong are conducted in accordance with the relevant regulations and rules by persons who are fit and proper and are licensed or registered to conduct such business.
13. The regulatory powers of the SFC are primarily vested in the SFO.

#### *Regulated activities*

14. The SFO covers different types of regulated activities as prescribed in Schedule 5 of the SFO.
15. In the context of Type 13 regulated activity, “scheme assets” may be regarded as a subset of “client assets”, “scheme securities” as a subset of “client securities” and “scheme money as a subset of “client money”. Dealing with scheme assets, including scheme money and scheme securities, is only applicable to an intermediary or its associated entity in the conduct of Type 13 regulated activity.

#### *Auditor’s statutory rights and duties*

- ~~45~~16. Guidance on the auditor’s statutory rights and duties under the SFO is given in Parts III and V of this PN.

### Regulatory requirements

- ~~46~~17. The SFO provides a framework for the regulation of regulated entities in Hong Kong and the detailed requirements are set out in subsidiary legislation, codes or guidelines issued by the SFC. Each regulated entity is bound by all these requirements, where applicable, to remain fit and proper. The main provisions of the SFO, subsidiary legislation, codes or guidelines are set out in the following paragraphs but they are not a substitute for the legislation and rules themselves. In addition, the SFC has posted a series of “Frequently Asked Questions” on its website which provide a useful source of reference on how to interpret specific circumstances which may arise.

#### *Licensing and registration*

- ~~47~~18. Persons carrying on business in a regulated activity in Hong Kong are required to have successfully applied for a licence, or a registration in the case of an authorized financial institution. In addition, they must remain fit and proper at all times.

#### *Business conduct*

- ~~48~~19. This is the ongoing requirement expected of a regulated entity in conducting its business and is designed to ensure that adequate standards are maintained in dealings with clients.

**4920.** The requirements for business conduct are set out either in the legislation or in non-statutory codes of conduct or guidelines. Breach of legislation is subject to criminal sanctions and breach of any codes of conduct or guidelines may be taken into account in determining fitness and properness. The auditor has no requirement to express an opinion on the business conduct of a regulated entity but should be aware of the requirements.

*Client assets (including scheme assets)*

**2021.** The client asset rules apply to regulated entities that control or are otherwise responsible for client assets (including scheme assets) and they cover the proper protection of these assets. There are two sets of rules:

- a. one dealing with client securities; (including scheme securities); and
- b. the other dealing with client money (including scheme money) (not applicable to an associated entity of a registered institution or an associated entity of a licensed corporation where the associated entity is an authorized financial institution).

**2422.** The Securities and Futures (Client Securities) Rules require client securities (including scheme securities) and securities collateral received or held in Hong Kong to be treated by regulated entities in a prescribed manner.

**2223.** The Securities and Futures (Client Money) Rules require segregation of client money (including scheme money) received or held in Hong Kong by licensed corporations and their associated entities (unless they are not applicable to an associated entity of a registered institution or an associated entity of a licensed corporation where the associated entity is an authorized financial institutions/institution) in a prescribed manner.

*Record keeping*

**2324.** The Securities and Futures (Keeping of Records) Rules are rules for the keeping of accounts and records by regulated entities. Such records are required to contain sufficient details to explain business activities and operations and account for their client assets, ~~and to be retained for a specified period of time.~~ (including scheme assets), and to be retained for a specified period of time. Section 3 of the Securities and Futures (Keeping of Records) Rules set out the general record keeping requirements for intermediaries, in particular, Schedule 1 lists out the records to be kept by intermediaries under section 3(2)(a). Section 3A<sup>1</sup> of the Securities and Futures (Keeping of Records) Rules set out the general record keeping for intermediaries licensed or registered for Type 13 regulated activity, in particular, Schedule 2 lists out the records to be kept by intermediaries under section 3A(3).

*Financial resources requirements*

**2425.** The FRR are made to ensure that licensed corporations are financially sound and have the resources to provide adequate services to investors.

**2526.** Licensed corporations are subject to minimum paid-up capital and liquid capital requirements. The requirements are different for different regulated activities. However, where a corporation is licensed for more than one regulated activity, the highest of the paid-up share capital and liquid capital requirements which are applicable to the different regulated activities will apply.

---

<sup>1</sup> For intermediaries licensed or registered for Type 13 regulated activity, records of relevant CIS property, which may cover wider asset classes than scheme assets, are required to be kept in accordance with section 3A of the Securities and Futures (Keeping of Records) Rules.

## PART II - THE AUDIT OF FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

### Introduction

**2627.** Hong Kong Standards on Auditing (HKSA)s apply to the audit of the financial statements of any entity, irrespective of the size of the entity, its legal form, or the nature of its activities. The commentary which follows identifies the special considerations arising from the application of certain individual HKSA)s to the audit of the financial statements of a regulated entity, and suggests ways in which these can be addressed.

### Agreeing the terms of audit engagement

**2728.** An auditor's engagement letter would normally cover reporting requirements under the Securities and Futures (Accounts and Audit) Rules and in particular, the auditor's rights and duties to report directly to the SFC. An auditor should understand that compliance or regulatory reporting is a separate engagement from the audit of financial statements and ensure that appropriate terms of engagement are agreed before the commencement of the audit engagement. Further guidance of the respective responsibilities of the management of the regulated entities and of the auditor is provided in Parts III and IV of this PN.

**2829.** The engagement letter makes it clear that the statutory duty to report places an obligation on the auditor to report matters if found and does not involve undertaking additional work to identify them. It also clarifies that the auditor may sometimes consider it necessary to report directly to the SFC without the client's prior knowledge or consent.

### Audit planning

#### Understanding the regulated entity and its environment

**2930.** Regulated entities can be complex and the auditor would seek to understand the business and the regulatory regime in which they operate. The auditor would ensure that the audit engagement is performed/overseen by staff with sufficient knowledge about the licensed corporation's operations, market practices, the products handled by the licensed corporation and the SFC regulations for regulated activities carried out by the licensed corporation. A fundamental principle embodied in the HKICPA *Code of Ethics for Professional Accountants* is that the auditor does not accept or perform work which it is not competent to undertake<sup>2</sup>. The auditor may also consider the use of technical specialists, for example where the business is trading in complex products or is heavily reliant on e-commerce. Generally, there is a close relationship between planning and understanding the entity and an understanding of the high level control environment.

**3031.** To avoid potential duplication of audit effort, the audit approach to a regulated entity normally addresses the audit of the financial statements and the work required for reporting under the Securities and Futures (Accounts and Audit) Rules together. The auditor plans so as to ensure that its audit work on the financial statements and the regulatory reporting is completed within timescales imposed by the SFC. The audit plan for a regulated entity typically explains the legal and regulatory background and, in order to reduce audit risk, discusses those areas where the auditor's responsibilities are different from those for other types of entity.

**3132.** Risk assessment procedures are defined as the audit procedures performed to obtain an understanding of the entity and its environment, including the entity's internal control, to identify and assess the risks of material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error, at the financial statement and assertion levels.

<sup>2</sup> Auditor<sub>s</sub> may refer to Alert Issue 35 issued by the HKICPA for guidance and the link is: <https://www.hkicpa.org.hk/-/media/HKICPA-Website/New-HKICPA/Standards-and-regulation/QA/2020/Issue-35---Compliance-work-for-regulated-entities.pdf#page=1>

**3233.** A thorough understanding and assessment of the risks of material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error, in the financial statements is fundamental to performing an efficient and effective audit.

**3334.** The risk of material misstatement are influenced by but not limited to the following factors:

- a. the markets and industries in which the regulated entity operates;
- b. the characteristics of the engagement and of the regulated entity's management; and
- c. the internal control environment of the regulated entity.

**3435.** As part of the normal procedures undertaken for the purposes of the audit of the financial statements and reporting under the Securities and Futures (Accounts and Audit) Rules, the auditor would gain an understanding of the regulated entity's operations, including the nature of the business carried out. They would also obtain an understanding of the control environment that exists, including the regulated entity's high level controls for complying with the applicable codes and guidelines.

**3536.** Such an understanding will provide an indication of the extent to which the tone-at-the-top and controls in a regulated entity are conducive to compliance, for example through consideration of:

- a. the adequacy of procedures and training to inform staff of the requirements of the applicable codes and guidelines to ensure that they meet those requirements;
- b. adequacy of authority and supervision;
- c. the review of compliance by senior management;
- d. procedures to ensure that possible incidents of non-compliance are investigated by an appropriate person and are brought to the attention of senior management;
- e. the authority of, and resources available to, the compliance officer, internal auditor and those in charge of compliance functions; and
- f. the establishment of policies and controls to combat money laundering and terrorist financing.

**—Assessing internal controls and risk**

**3637.** Underlying any systems of control adopted by a regulated entity is the control environment. Such an environment is created by management having and showing a positive attitude towards the operation of controls and by an organizational framework which enables proper segregation and delegation of control functions and which encourages failings to be reported and corrected. Thus, where a lapse in the operation of a control is treated as a matter of concern, rather than being largely overlooked, the control environment will be stronger and will contribute to effective systems of control; whereas a weak control environment will undermine detailed controls, however well designed.

**3738.** In making an assessment of various risk factors, the auditor would normally meet senior management and the Compliance Officer as part of its planning process. It would also consider the following:

- a. operational manuals;
- b. documentation of systems and controls;
- c. compliance monitoring programmes and results;



- d. the records maintained by the regulated entity of any non-compliances and notifications to the SFC that may have occurred during the financial year under review;
- e. correspondence with the SFC, relating to financial returns and any other matters;
- f. the results of inspection visits made by the SFC;
- g. the register of complaints received from clients during the financial year under review;
- h. any relevant internal audit reports; and
- i. any unresolved items from previously issued management letters on internal control weakness.

**3839.** There is a wide variation between different regulated entities in terms of size, activity and organization, so that there can be no standard approach to internal controls and risk. The auditor assesses the adequacy of controls in relation to the circumstances of each entity. The following factors would normally be considered by the auditor in assessing whether there may be an increased level of inherent risk of material misstatement:

- a. the nature and status of the regulated entity and any changes in its status which may affect the application of protection of client assets (including scheme assets) requirements;
- b. a change in the market environment (for example, high volatility);
- c. the introduction of new clients or products or marketing and distribution methods;
- d. the risk profile of business undertaken, the complexity and consistency of products, methods and operations in different departments or locations;
- e. client profile (retail vs. institutional);
- f. existence of claims and complaints by clients;
- g. the legal and operational structure of the regulated entity, the number of branches or sales offices (see paragraph **4041** below);
- h. where a group structure exists, the financial and managerial support provided to and by other group companies;
- i. management's attitude towards regulation, compliance and control and its appreciation of the importance of investor protection;
- j. the respective roles and responsibilities attributed to the finance, internal audit and compliance functions;
- k. the recruitment, competence, training and supervision of personnel (e.g. the use of licensed representatives); and
- l. l. the integrity, competence and experience of management.

**3940.** Regulated entities vary greatly in the complexity of their operations and hence the auditor may consider whether to take a reliance approach on the internal controls of a regulated entity. Attention should be paid in cases where the accounting system is at risk of failing to capture transactions which do not involve the immediate movement of funds - such as trading in certain derivative instruments or underwriting. A sound understanding of the process is required in order to guard against the risk of unrecorded or mis-recorded transactions.

**4041.** Some regulated entities operate a network of branches. In such instances, the auditor determines the degree of head office control over the business and accounting functions at the branch office and the scope and effectiveness of the regulated entity's inspection and/or internal audit visits. Where branches maintain separate accounting records, the extent of audit visits and work on each

branch is also dependent on the materiality of, and risks associated with, the operations of each branch and the extent to which controls over branches are exercised centrally. In the case of smaller branches, the degree to which exceptions to the regulated entity's normal control procedures may be caused by minimal staffing levels (the greater difficulty of ensuring adequate segregation of duties, for example) and the consequential need for an increased level of control from outside the branch are relevant to audit planning.

**4142.** As the nature of the business undertaken by a regulated entity, its size and its particular circumstances will affect the nature and extent of the auditor's work. Certain risks will not be applicable to all regulated entities. Factors that will be considered in relation to the nature of the particular regulated entity are:

- a. the scope of licensing in relation to the holding of client assets; ~~(including scheme assets);~~
- b. the extent of investment management discretion permitted;
- c. the introduction of new and revised requirements, with reference to the up-to-date FAQs sections on the SFC website;
- d. changes to existing requirements; and
- e. modifications or waivers granted or special conditions imposed by the SFC.

**4243.** The size of the regulated entity will have an important bearing on the design and formality of the systems and controls. The operating procedures and methods of recording and processing transactions used by small regulated entities often differ significantly from those of large regulated entities. Internal controls which would be relevant to a large regulated entity, may not be practical or appropriate to a small one. Management of a small regulated entity has less need to depend on formal controls for the reliability of the records and other information, because of personal contact with, or involvement in, the operation of the business itself. Nevertheless the need for a positive attitude to the control environment is equally relevant in both small and large regulated entities.

**4344.** Systems of control, including the assignment of responsibilities as set out in the Internal Control Guidelines, need to be clearly documented if they are to be understood, communicated and operated effectively and consistently. A regulated entity and its auditor would consider whether appropriate documentation is a prerequisite of an adequate system.

**4445.** The effective operation of a control system may be enhanced by an internal audit department or by specific monitoring performed by a compliance department. The existence of such departments and their scope and objectives are matters for management. In assessing the effectiveness of such departments, the auditor will consider the terms of reference of the departments, their independence from operational personnel and management, the quality of staffing and to whom they report in the regulated entity.

#### **Identifying risks relating to fraud**

**4546.** The following factors which may indicate an increased risk of fraud may be especially relevant for a regulated entity (this list is not exhaustive):

- a. backlogs in key reconciliations, particularly those with brokers and exchanges and for bank accounts and safe custody accounts - both the regulated entity's own and those relating to its clients;
- b. inadequate segregation of duties between the front, middle and back office staff (i.e. "incompatible functions");
- c. complex products and transactions inadequately understood by management;
- d. inadequate definition of management responsibilities and supervision of staff;

- e. elements of the remuneration package (particularly bonuses) for certain staff which are highly geared in relation to reported profits or revenues;
- f. existence of hold mail arrangements, operation of discretionary accounts, and issuance and acceptance of third party or cash cheques;
- g. volatility in the market place;
- h. no established compliance culture or inadequate internal controls;
- i. risk of management override of controls;
- j. exceptionally low level of cash which is inconsistent with the regulated entity's business model;
- k. exceptionally high level of leverage which is inconsistent with the regulated entity's business model (such as a cash broker persistently borrowing exceptionally high amount of bank loan); and
- l. exceptionally large amount of past due client receivables.

Additional factors relevant for regulated entities can be found in the SFC's website which contain press releases and circulars providing examples of malpractices and advisory circulars of compliance areas.

### Consideration of laws and regulations

**4647.** The auditor shall also obtain sufficient appropriate audit evidence regarding compliance with the provisions of those laws and regulations generally recognized to have a direct effect on the determination of material amounts and disclosures in the financial statements.

**4748.** The auditor needs to recognize particularly that some laws and regulations (including any licensing conditions imposed on the regulated entity, its responsible officers or licensed representatives) are central to the regulated entity's ability to conduct its business as compliance is a prerequisite of obtaining a licence to operate. Non-compliance may result in the regulated entity ceasing operations, or call into question the regulated entity's status as a going concern.

**4849.** The auditor of the regulated entity will normally:

- a. discuss with the regulated entity's general counsel, compliance officer, internal auditor and other personnel responsible for compliance to obtain an understanding of the regulated entity's policies and procedures as to how it complies with the applicable laws and regulations and how it detects non-compliance; and review any work on compliance matters carried out by them;
- b. inquire of management as to whether the regulated entity is in compliance with the applicable laws and regulations;
- c. read the SFC's press releases and public register of licensed persons on its website for any disciplinary actions or licensing conditions imposed on the regulated entity, its responsible officers or licensed representatives;
- d. review correspondence between the regulated entity and the SFC; and
- e. assess the actual or contingent consequences arising from non-compliance and consider the impact on the financial statements.

The auditor should be alert to findings of the above and other audit procedures performed that may indicate instances of non-compliance. For example, a licensed corporation which is an introducing agent may be subject to certain conditions, including but not limited to not holding client assets,

imposed on its licence and any breach of which may affect the fitness and properness of the licensed corporation to remain licensed. The auditor may consider, where appropriate, carrying out additional audit procedures in response to any suspected non-compliance identified.

**4950.** The auditor has no obligation to seek out breaches of the law, codes and guidelines and no direct reporting responsibility in respect of the codes and guidelines issued by the SFC. However, the auditor would ensure that members of the audit team have a general understanding of the applicable codes and guidelines, sufficient to enable them to be alert to possible non-compliances which may come to their attention. The auditor would also include procedures within their planning process to ensure that members of the audit team are able to recognize reportable matters which are encountered in their audit work and that such matters are escalated without delay. Breaches of such codes and guidelines may:

- a. give rise to claims by investors against the regulated entity; and
- b. attract regulatory consequences, such as disciplinary actions which may include pecuniary fine, or cause the regulated entity to have its business restricted or, in extreme cases, have its licence suspended or revoked so threatening its viability as a going concern.

**5051.** The auditor will also be aware that breaches of the codes and guidelines could have consequences for other matters which are the subject of the auditor's reporting responsibilities to the SFC for example, financial resources, accounting records and the handling of client assets- (including scheme assets).

**5452.** The auditor needs to be alert to any indication that a regulated entity is conducting business outside the scope of its licence or in violation of any licensing conditions imposed on its licence as this may affect the fitness and properness of the regulated entity to remain licensed or even amount to an offence under the SFO.

**5253.** Where an apparent non-compliance of the codes and guidelines comes to the auditor's attention, it needs to ensure that the implications for its reporting responsibilities are correctly identified.

**5354.** The auditor would enquire of management and staff whether any non-compliances have occurred and obtain appropriate representations from management, preferably in writing, addressing any possible non-compliances which have come to their attention.

**5455.** The auditor would also note that the codes and guidelines issued by the SFC are not exhaustive in nature and auditor would always exercise professional judgment in determining the adequacy of controls and certain behaviours/conduct.

**5556.** In discharging its reporting responsibilities regarding a regulated entity, the auditor must have particular regard to any changes in the SFO and its subsidiary legislation and any other requirements of the SFC in force during the financial year to which the report relates.

#### **Communication for breach of laws and regulations issued by the SFC**

**5657.** Unless there are reasons for supposing a report would be made directly to the SFC (see Part V of this PN), the auditor would discuss promptly with appropriate management of the regulated entity (including the compliance officer) apparent breaches of the law, codes and guidelines, or instances where a regulated entity may be carrying on activities outside the scope of its authorization, which come to the auditor's attention in the course of the audit. This will both enable the auditor to determine the impact of the matter on its reporting obligations, and permit appropriate corrective action to be taken by management.

**5758.** Breaches or possible breaches of the law, codes and guidelines which come to the auditor's attention and which neither require the auditor to make a report to the SFC under the statutory duty provisions of the SFO, nor require its auditor's report to be qualified, will be considered for inclusion in the auditor's management letter.

**5859.** The SFC may request a copy of the auditor's management letter from the regulated entity. Against this background, the auditor may consider to include in the management letter to directors or management a statement that:

- a. the management letter has been prepared for the sole use of the regulated entity;
- b. it must not be disclosed to a third party (except to the SFC), or quoted or referred to, without the written consent of the auditor; and
- c. no responsibility is assumed by the auditor to any other person.

### **Correspondence and notes of meetings with the SFC subject to section 378 of the SFO**

**5960.** If the auditor becomes aware of correspondence and notes of meetings with the SFC which are subject to the secrecy provisions of section 378 of the SFO, the auditor should request the regulated entity to seek the SFC's consent for the regulated entity to disclose the correspondence and notes of meetings with the SFC to the auditor. Paragraphs **472173** to **474175** provide additional information on the circumstances that the SFC may communicate to the auditor matters pertinent to a regulated entity for the purpose of enabling or assisting the SFC to perform its functions under any of the relevant provisions and Appendix 3 of this PN provides suggestions for additional representation to be obtained by the auditor from management in such circumstances.

**6061.** The auditor should also refer to the FAQs<sup>3</sup> issued by the SFC on application of section 378 of the SFO to disclosure of supervisory information by licensed corporations and the clarification<sup>4</sup> made by the SFC on application of the secrecy provisions to enforcement related matters.

**6162.** As explained in paragraph **472173** below, the SFC is able to disclose information directly to the auditor. Where such a matter has been brought to the attention of the auditor, it considers the implications for its work and may amend its approach accordingly. However, the fact that it may have been informed of such a matter by the SFC does not, of itself, require the auditor to change the scope of its work, nor does it require the auditor actively to search for evidence in relation to the matter communicated by the SFC.

### **Use of information technology**

**6263.** The use of information technology (IT) in the information system by regulated entities is increasingly common. ~~The Processes in which a regulated entities-entity employs IT may employ IT for the purpose of include, where applicable, but are not limited to:~~

- Account opening
  - Placement of clients' trade and other orders
  - Order or investment management (e.g. high frequency trading, algorithm trading)
  - Investment advising (e.g. robo-advising)
  - Settlement of clients' trades
  - Record keeping and issuing trade documents
  - Compliance
  - Management of market, credit, liquidity or other risks
- ~~63~~ Subscription and redemption
  - Valuation/price/net asset value calculation monitoring
  - Distribution payments
  - Cash flow monitoring and reconciliation
  - Investment monitoring

<sup>3</sup> The FAQs can be found in the link: <https://www.sfc.hk/web/EN/faqs/intermediaries/supervision/application-of-section-378-of-the-sfo-to-disclosure-of-supervisory-information-by-licensed-corporations/17.12.2018.html#1>

<sup>4</sup> The clarification can be found in the link: <https://www.sfc.hk/web/EN/regulatory-functions/enforcement/secrecy-provision.html>

**64.** The auditor would consider how the use of IT in the information system affects the audit. The use of IT may be integral to the business of a regulated entity due to the high volume of transactions and the linkages to various third party systems. IT is also used by regulated entities to prepare financial statements and regulatory reports to the SFC. When a regulated entity employs IT, the auditor should obtain an understanding on the regulated entity's use of IT in the information system and consider the impact of IT to the risk of material misstatements in the financial statements and to the conclusion of the compliance report.

**6465.** There is a wide variation between different regulated entities in terms of size, activity, organization and complexity and reliance of IT, so that there can be no standard approach to identify and assess the potential risks and relevant internal controls. The auditor should exercise professional judgements to determine the scope of testing on the relevant IT controls.

**6566.** If the use of IT system is significant, the following factors would also be considered by the auditor in assessing whether there may be an increased level of inherent risk of material misstatements in the financial statements.

- Access to programs and data

Policies and procedures that determine only authorized access is granted to programs and data upon authentication of a user's identity. Controls over access to programs and data include the processes used by the regulated entity for user account creation, termination, and modification (both business users and other appropriate personnel) and their related access rights.

- Program changes

Policies and procedures that determine changes to programs are requested, authorized, performed, tested, and implemented to achieve management's application control objectives.

- Computer operations

Procedures or mechanisms in place to ensure that production systems are processed as approved, that production problems are corrected to ensure errors are not introduced.

- Program development and acquisition

Policies and procedures that determine applications are developed or acquired, configured, and implemented to achieve management's application control objectives. This domain is relevant only where significant development or acquisition, implementation, or conversion projects exist or are anticipated that will impact the risk of material misstatement to the current year's financial statements.

The auditor should also consider whether the IT control environment meets the control objectives set out in Appendix 1 in this PN when assessing the risk of non-compliance with client asset rules [and how the IT system maintains all records as required under the Securities and Futures \(Keeping of Records\) Rules.](#)

**6667.** An effective IT control environment may allow the auditor to have more confidence in internal control and the reliability of audit evidence generated internally within the regulated entity. Deficiencies in the control environment, however, have the opposite effect.

**6768.** As new information system technologies emerge, they are frequently employed by regulated entities to build increasingly complex computer systems that may include micro-to-mainframe links, distributed data bases, end user processing, and business management systems that feed information directly into the accounting systems. Such systems increase the overall complexity of IT environment and the complexity of the specific applications that they affect. As a result, they



may increase risk and require further consideration. The auditor should consider and assess how the regulated entity's IT control environment responds to the increasing risks.

## Using a service organization

**6869.** Some regulated entities outsource a variety of activities. Specific examples include:

- a. safe custody of client assets or relevant CIS property by a custodian;
- b. settlement or clearing of trades (this may or may not include the third party taking on the settlement risk, maintaining accounting records, reconciling client assets, (including scheme assets where applicable), sending client statements directly);
- c. maintenance of books and records;
- d. product administration (such as unit trusts or savings schemes);
- e. investment management;
- f. valuation of investments; and
- g. electronic data storage and processing.

**6970.** A regulated entity would ensure compliance with the law, codes and guidelines whether or not activities are outsourced. In addition, a regulated entity using a service organization would comply with the following requirements in respect of the outsourced activities:

- a. ongoing assessment and monitoring of the competence and independence of the third party such as reviewing of reports issued in accordance with Hong Kong Standard on Assurance Engagements 3402 "Assurance Reports on Controls at a Service Organization" or other relevant service organization's internal control reports where available;
- b. responsibility for keeping of records and regulatory requirements in relation to keeping of records, either electronically or not, at the third party;
- c. responsibility for acts or omissions by the third party; and
- d. regulatory requirements when information is processed electronically using the third party.

**7071.** The auditor shall determine whether a sufficient understanding of the nature and significance of the services provided by the service organization and their effect on the regulated entity's internal control relevant to the audit has been obtained to provide a basis for the identification and assessment of potential risks of material misstatement. If the auditor is unable to obtain a sufficient understanding of the processing provided by the service organization to enable the auditor to evaluate the design and implementation of relevant controls then the auditor shall consider the impact on the reports.

## Specific application guidance on client assets

**7172.** Regulated entities are specifically required by the SFC to have adequate systems of internal control over client assets, (including scheme assets), which include appropriate systems to minimize the risk of losses to the business from irregularities, fraud or error.

~~72.~~ ~~Client assets is an important and relevant factor to audit planning.~~ **73.** Any material deficiency in the adequacy of internal controls over client assets (including scheme assets where applicable) will need to be reported in the compliance report (see paragraphs ~~412113~~ to ~~417118~~) to the SFC. In addition, any shortfall in client assets, (including scheme assets where applicable), whether due to misappropriation or otherwise, may have significant implications on the regulated entity's compliance with the client asset rules and the financial position of the regulated entity. Such implications and impact could affect the opinions to be given by the auditor in its audit report and compliance report and trigger the auditor's obligation to report to the SFC under section 157 of the

SFO. If the auditor considers that the regulated entity's system of control over client assets (including scheme assets where applicable), or system of control to avoid receiving or holding client assets for a regulated entity which does not hold client assets are inadequate or decides that no reliance would be placed on the regulated entity's systems, the auditor would use its professional judgment to consider the use of fund tracing procedures or external circularization as a substantive procedure to obtain evidence on some of the control objectives, e.g. paragraphs 42, 44, 6557, 59, 70, 72, 88 and 6689 of Appendix 1 to this PN. Fund tracing means obtaining copies of sampled outward cheques issued by the regulated entity from the bank or copies of cheques deposited into the bank account of the regulated entity and verifying the identity of the payee or drawer against the regulated entity's accounting records.

~~7374.~~ Consideration as to whether or not to perform external circularization on client assets (including scheme assets where applicable) would be linked to the fraud risk assessment and the assessment of the quality of internal controls, particularly those over client assets- (including scheme assets where applicable). Other factors such as prior experience in terms of the response rate of the confirmation and the quality of the responses received may be relevant. The auditor exercises its professional judgment to determine whether and how to go about the performance of a circularization of clients' account balances.

~~7475.~~ If external confirmations are not used, the auditor seeks sufficient appropriate evidence from tests of control and other substantive procedures. For example, the regulated entity may have well established controls in respect of trade capture, trade monitoring, reconciliations and account statements and it may also have an independent function responsible for periodic confirmation of balances with its clients. The auditor may consider it more effective to test these controls, in addition to other substantive procedures, rather than carry out its own confirmation procedures.

~~7576.~~ The higher the auditor's assessment of risk, the more important it is for the auditor to seek reliable and relevant audit evidence from substantive procedures. For example, if the auditor considers that the regulated entity has inadequate systems of control over client assets- (including scheme assets where applicable), or the auditor decides not to rely on the entity's internal control systems, then external confirmations would be a strong substantive procedure.

~~76.~~ ~~The~~ 77. Where relevant, the auditor may circularize external confirmations of client account balances together with client assets held for custody so as to obtain audit evidence to support the financial statement assertions and regulatory reporting items at the same time.

~~7778.~~ The auditor exercises its professional judgment to determine the necessary sample sizes to obtain sufficient ~~appropriate~~ appropriate audit evidence in respect of a circularization of client account balances, including the following matters:

- a. the auditor would exercise its judgment in determining the sample size in respect of the total population of client account balances both in terms of number of clients and the monetary value of client assets- (including scheme assets where applicable). The auditor should also consider to circularize external confirmations on client accounts with zero account balances or assets holding if appropriate-~~;~~ and
- b. a risk-based approach should be adopted for sampling client accounts for circularization whereby greater emphasis is placed on accounts which are more susceptible to misstatement or frauds, such as accounts under an arrangement to hold mail or to direct mail to the address of management or staff of the regulated entity, inactive and dormant accounts etc.

~~7879.~~ Negative confirmations provide less persuasive audit evidence than positive confirmations. Accordingly, the auditor should not use negative confirmation requests as the sole substantive audit procedure to address an assessed risk of material misstatement at the assertion level unless all of the following are present:

- a. The auditor has assessed the risk of material misstatement as low and has obtained sufficient appropriate audit evidence regarding the operating effectiveness of controls relevant to the assertion;



- b. The population of items subject to negative confirmation procedures comprises a large number of small, homogeneous account balances, transactions or conditions;
- c. A very low exception rate is expected; and
- d. The auditor is not aware of circumstances or conditions that would cause recipients of negative confirmation requests to disregard such requests.

79

80. Below is a list of procedures which may be considered by the auditor when executing a circularization of client account balances:

- a. appropriate audit steps should be taken to ensure the completeness of the list of clients from which samples are drawn;
- b. the auditor would independently select samples for circularization;
- c. the confirmation would be prepared in language that the clients of the regulated entity are familiar with;
- d. the auditor should ensure that the client particulars (such as the name and address of the client) stated in statements of account to be sent to the clients for confirmation agree to the regulated entity's latest client information. Furthermore, the auditor should also ensure that the account balances and assets holding in the statements of account sampled for confirmation are consistent with the regulated entity's relevant records. For example, holdings in each stock as stated in the statements of account should be checked against the underlying accounting records and stock ledgers, which should be reconciled with custodians' statements and/or physical stock count results with discrepancies properly followed up;
- e. to improve the number of responses it is advisable to send the confirmation out as close as possible to the date that the regulated entity has sent out its monthly statements;
- f. the confirmation would be directly sent to and received from clients in the same manner (through regular mail or electronic mail) as the dispatchment of client statements by the regulated entity. Clients would be provided with convenient means of responding to the auditor. For responses received electronically, the auditor shall consider reliability of the responses received;
- g. the auditor should understand the nature of any client enquiries regarding any discrepancies in their account balances or assets holding and follow up on the resolutions of identified discrepancies;
- h. where appropriate the auditor should determine appropriate procedures to assess the reliability of the confirmation letters received, such as verifying client signatures on the confirmation against client agreements and/or directly calling the clients to verify the agreed balances on a sample basis;
- i. where appropriate the auditor should carry out adequate and timely follow-up procedures for the non-reply confirmations of client account balances. Examples of procedures include sending reminders or directly calling the non-reply clients; and
- j. if the confirmation is not replied, the auditor should obtain sufficient audit evidence from other relevant substantive procedures. Examples of procedures include reviewing subsequent settlement of outstanding balances, reviewing subsequent settlement of margin calls and reviewing trade orders and withdrawals of funds and securities recorded in the client accounts.

**Susequent**

## **Subsequent events**

**8081.** In addition to the specific procedures to identify subsequent events which may require amendment to, or disclosure in, the financial statements for the regulated entity, the auditor would review correspondence with the SFC since the financial year end and make enquiries of management to determine whether any breaches of the law, codes and guidelines or other regulatory concerns have come to light since the financial year end.

## **Going concern**

**8182.** In reviewing going concern, the auditor of a regulated entity would consider the following areas since the possible regulatory action of the SFC on the regulated entity is particularly relevant to the going concern assumption:

- a. voluntary undertakings requested by or given to the SFC, new or proposed licensing conditions, regulatory censure or fines;
- b. regulatory capital shortages;
- c. visits from the SFC;
- d. reputation and other indicators (including client complaints);
- e. general non-compliance with the law, codes and guidelines; and
- f. unusual movements in the financial markets.

**8283.** If the auditor has any doubts as to the ability of a regulated entity to continue as a going concern, it may be required to make a report to the SFC under their statutory duties on which guidance is set out in Part V of this PN.

**8384.** If the auditor is performing a cessation audit as discussed in paragraphs **426127** and **427128** below, the auditor may wish to consider whether the financial statements of that entity should be prepared on a going concern or a break-up basis.

## **Written representations**

**8485.** The auditor of a regulated entity would consider obtaining specific representations from management. An example management representation letter is set out in Appendix 3 to this PN.

## PART III - AUDITOR'S REPORTS UNDER THE SECURITIES AND FUTURES (ACCOUNTS AND AUDIT) RULES

### Introduction

**8586.** This part of the PN is intended to provide a common approach to reporting by the auditor on regulated entities and to establish clear unequivocal wording of the auditor's reports such that a standard form of wording may be used by the auditor when reporting. One benefit of establishing a standard form of report is that it removes any ambiguity as to the assurance obtained from the auditor about compliance with the requirements of the SFO. Example auditor's reports are set out in Appendix 2 to this PN.

### Management's responsibilities

**8687.** The auditor's reporting responsibility under the Securities and Futures (Accounts and Audit) Rules addresses matters for which the primary responsibility lies with the management of the regulated entity. The primary responsibilities of management under the Securities and Futures (Accounts and Audit) Rules are, broadly:

- a. to prepare annual financial statements in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles;
- b. to prepare the applicable returns as detailed in section 3(1)(b) or 3(2)(b) (as the case may be) of the Securities and Futures (Accounts and Audit) Rules; (for licensed corporations only);
- c. to prepare an Account Disclosure Document which sets out additional financial information (for licensed corporations only);
- d. to prepare Analysis of Client Assets (for associated entities only of intermediaries other than those licensed or registered for Type 13 regulated activity in relation to the carrying on by the intermediaries of Type 13 regulated activity);
- e. to prepare Analysis of Scheme Assets (for associated entities of intermediaries licensed or registered for Type 13 regulated activity in relation to the carrying on by the intermediaries of Type 13 regulated activity);
- e.f. to ensure that the client asset rules and the Securities and Futures (Keeping of Records) Rules are observed/complied with; and
- f.g. to prepare the Business and Risk Management Questionnaire.

Details are set out in section 3 of the Securities and Futures (Accounts and Audit) Rules.

**8788.** Management should consider the above in their design and maintenance of the systems of control. They should also recognize where appropriate the cost of a particular control, as against its purpose and expected benefit.

**8889.** For the foregoing reasons, different systems and controls may be deemed adequate in different regulated entities, if they provide reasonable assurance that certain control objectives have been achieved. In designing the systems and controls, management would address, inter alia, the following general control objectives:

- a. business is planned and conducted in an orderly, prudent and cost-effective manner in adherence to established and documented policies;

- b. transactions and commitments are entered into only in accordance with management's general or specific authority;
- c. client assets, or, in relation to an intermediary licensed or registered for Type 13 regulated activity, scheme assets, are safeguarded and are completely and accurately recorded;
- d. assets are safeguarded and liabilities are controlled;
- e. the risk of loss from fraud, other irregularities and error is minimized, and any such losses are promptly and readily identified;
- ~~f.~~ f. management is able to monitor on a regular and timely basis the regulated entity's business position relative to its risk exposure;
- g. management is able to prepare complete and accurate returns for the SFC on a timely basis in accordance with the FRR; and
- h. issues relating to compliance with the law, codes and guidelines are resolved in a timely manner to the satisfaction of the SFC.

~~9990.~~ In designing a control system, management needs to understand the interaction between manual and computer controls and how they contribute in aggregate to the achievement of the control objectives.

### **Auditor's responsibilities and reporting requirements**

~~9091.~~ The auditor's reporting responsibility under the Securities and Futures (Accounts and Audit) Rules is primarily to provide assurance to the SFC on the financial information provided by the regulated entity and on the systems of control operated by the regulated entity during the financial year covered by the report in relation to the regulated entity's stewardship of client assets- (including scheme assets where applicable).

~~9492.~~ The precise matters on which the auditor is required to report vary according to the nature of the regulated entity's activities. Under section 4(1) of the Securities and Futures (Accounts and Audit) Rules, the auditor is required to prepare an audit report on the regulated entity's financial statements and a compliance report.

~~9293.~~ The two separate reports mentioned in paragraph ~~9492~~ above are required to be prepared by the auditor in respect of the year under review. They are required to be submitted by the regulated entity to the SFC within four months of their year end. The auditor should take all reasonable steps for its reports to be issued in order for the regulated entity to submit them to the SFC by the specified date.

#### **The auditor's report on the financial statements**

~~9394.~~ For a regulated entity-, the auditor's report contains a true and fair audit opinion and states whether the financial statements are in accordance with the records kept under the Securities and Futures (Keeping of Records) Rules and satisfy the requirements of the Securities and Futures (Accounts and Audit) Rules. An example auditor's report is given in Example 1 of Appendix 2 to this PN.

#### **Compliance report by the auditor**

~~9495.~~ In the auditor's compliance report, the auditor should cover:

- a. in the case of a licensed corporation, whether the required returns made up to the last day of the financial year as detailed in section 3(1)(b) of the Securities and Futures (Accounts and Audit) Rules have been correctly compiled from the records of the licensed corporation or, if not correctly compiled, the nature and extent of the incorrectness;

- b. in so far as applicable, whether the regulated entity had systems of control in place that were adequate to ensure compliance with the SFC's requirements with regard to client assets (including scheme assets) during the financial year in question;
- c. whether the regulated entity complied with the Securities and Futures (Keeping of Records) Rules during the financial year in question;
- d. in so far as applicable, whether the regulated entity complied with the client asset rules during the financial year in question; and
- e. in the case of a licensed corporation, whether there appears to have been any contravention of the FRR by the licensed corporation during the financial year in question.

9596. The compliance report setting out the auditor's conclusions on matters set out in paragraph 9495 should be addressed to the board of directors of the regulated entity:

- a. For a licensed corporation, an example compliance report is given in Example 2 of Appendix 2 to this PN.
- b. For an associated entity of an intermediary, an example compliance report is given in Example 3 of Appendix 2 to this PN.

*The assurance standards followed*

9697. The auditor would state that the compliance reporting engagement has been conducted in accordance with Hong Kong Standard on Assurance Engagements (HKSAE) 3000 (Revised), *Assurance Engagements Other Audits or Reviews of Historical Financial Information* issued by the HKICPA, and with reference to this PN. It also provides an informative summary of the work performed as the basis for the auditor's conclusion.

*Completion of the work performed and the date of the report*

9798. It is highly desirable that the work covered in the compliance report is completed together with the audit of the financial statements. In such case, the compliance report should be dated with the same date as the auditor's report on the financial statements.

9899. Further guidance on the reporting requirements of the compliance report are set out in paragraphs 99100 to 404105 below.

## Guidance on the reporting requirements of the Compliance Report

### ***Internal control considerations relating to Securities and Futures (Keeping of Records) Rules and Securities and Futures (Accounts and Audit) Rules***

99100. In considering the adequacy of systems of control required to ensure compliance with the client asset rules and the Securities and Futures (Keeping of Records) Rules, the auditor must recognize the inherent limitations of such systems. These limitations mean that, despite the existence of controls, errors or irregularities may occur and may not be detected. Also, projection of any evaluation of the systems to future periods is subject to the risk that management information and control procedures may become inadequate because of changes in conditions or the risk that the degree of compliance with those procedures may deteriorate.

400101. The auditor is required to report whether the regulated entity has satisfied the requirements of the Securities and Futures (Keeping of Records) Rules during the financial year under review. In order to report on whether the regulated entity has satisfied the requirements of these rules it is envisaged that consideration will be given to whether adequate systems for control of the regulated entity's accounting systems have been maintained.

404102. The Securities and Futures (Keeping of Records) Rules set out the basic characteristics of adequate accounting records in general and include requirements on the contents of specialized

accounting records, especially those concerned with client assets- (including scheme assets). Management, in establishing and maintaining accounting records, and the auditor, in forming a view as to whether adequate records have been kept, will need to refer to the detailed rules relevant to the particular regulated activities.

**402103.** The Securities and Futures (Keeping of Records) Rules require that regulated entities shall in relation to the businesses which constitute any regulated activities for which they are licensed and their associated entities as regards the receipt or holding of client assets (including scheme assets) in relation to such regulated activities, to keep, where applicable, such accounting, trading and other records as are sufficient to:

*For a licensed corporation*

- a. explain, and reflect the financial position and operation of, such businesses;
- b. enable statements of profit and loss accounts and other comprehensive income and balance sheets statements of financial position<sup>5</sup> that give a true and fair view of its financial affairs to be prepared from time to time;
- c. account for all client assets that it receives or holds or, in the case of a licensed corporation licensed for Type 13 regulated activity, account for all relevant CIS property in respect of each relevant CIS for which it provides depositary services for Type 13 regulated activity;
- d. enable all movements of such client assets to be traced through its accounting systems and, where applicable, stock holding systems, or in the case of a licensed corporation licensed for Type 13 regulated activity, enable all movement of such relevant CIS property to be traced through its accounting systems and, where applicable, holding systems for relevant CIS property;
- e. reconcile, on a monthly basis, any differences in its balances or positions with other persons and show how such differences were resolved;
- f. demonstrate compliance with certain sections of the client asset rules and that it has systems of control in place to ensure such compliance;
- g. enable it readily to establish whether it has complied with the FRR; and
- h. for all licensed corporations other than those only licensed for Type 13 regulated activity, keep records specified in the Schedule to 1 and sections 5, 6, 7(2) or 8 of the Securities and Futures (Keeping of Records) Rules. In the case of a licensed corporation licensed for Type 13 regulated activity, keep records specified in Schedule 2 of the Securities and Futures (Keeping of Records) Rules. Records include all orders or instructions received or initiated (where applicable) by the licensed corporation, regardless if the order or instruction is executed or not.

*For an associated entity*

- a. account for the client assets; or, for an associated entity of an intermediary in relation to the conduct by the intermediary of Type 13 regulated activity, scheme assets;
- b. enable all movements of the client assets to be traced through its accounting systems and, where applicable, stock holding systems, or in the case of an associated entity of an intermediary in relation to the conduct by the intermediary of Type 13 regulated activity, enable all movement of such scheme assets to be traced through its accounting systems and, where applicable, holding systems for scheme securities;
- c. show separately and account for all receipts, payments, deliveries and other uses or applications of the client assets or, for an associated entity of an intermediary in relation to

<sup>5</sup> Different terms like such as income statement, statement of comprehensive income, ~~statement of financial position~~, etc may be used in the auditor's report as long as they are consistent with the titles of the corresponding statements.

the conduct by the intermediary of Type 13 regulated activity, scheme assets effected by it, or on its behalf, and on whose behalf such receipts, payments, deliveries or other uses or applications of the client assets or, for an associated entity of an intermediary in relation to the conduct by the intermediary of Type 13 regulated activity, scheme assets have been effected;

- d. reconcile, on a monthly basis, any differences in its balances or positions with other persons and show how such differences were resolved;
- e. demonstrate compliance with certain sections of the client asset rules and that it has systems of control in place to ensure such compliance; and
- f. keep certain specific records where applicable.

~~403~~104. These records would be kept in such a manner as will enable an audit to be conveniently and properly carried out, and make entries in these records in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles where applicable. There are also particular requirements, over and above those outlined above, for licensed corporations involved in certain regulated activities.

~~404~~105. Detailed guidance on the control objectives and audit evidence in relation to the auditor's reporting requirements with regard to client assets (including scheme assets) under the Securities and Futures (Accounts and Audit) Rules are included in Appendix 1 to this PN. The auditor will need to apply judgment in determining the extent and nature of its work which would be based on a good understanding of the regulated entity's systems of control.

### **Securities and Futures (Financial Resources) Rules**

~~405~~106. The assessments of materiality and performance materiality for the financial statements of a regulated entity will require an auditor to make the same professional judgment decisions as on any audit. However, the auditor would remember that in respect of the compliance report there is no materiality concept outlined in the Securities and Futures (Accounts and Audit) Rules and therefore if the auditor becomes aware of any reportable matter then that should be reported in the compliance report.

~~406. Licensed corporations are~~107. A licensed corporation is required to submit to the SFC the following financial returns (as appropriate) as referred to in section 3(1)(b) of the Securities and Futures (Accounts and Audit) Rules made up to the last day of the financial year:

- a. Liquid capital computation (Form 1);
- b. Required liquid capital computation (Form 2);
- c. Summary of bank loans, advances and other credit facilities (Form 3);
- d. Analysis of margin clients (Form 4);
- e. Analysis of collateral received from margin clients (Form 5);
- f. Analysis of rolling balance cash clients (Form 6);
- ~~g.~~ g. Analysis of client assets where it is not licensed for Type 13 regulated activity (Form 8);
- h. Analysis of relevant CIS property received or held by it for any relevant CIS arising from the carrying on of Type 13 regulated activity (Form 8A); and
- ~~h~~i. Analysis of proprietary derivative positions (Form 10).



The auditor is suggested to perform the following procedures on the final revised and resubmitted financial returns as referred to in section 3(1)(b) of the Securities and Futures (Accounts and Audit) Rules made up to year end date:

- Check whether the financial returns are prepared from the licensed corporation's books and records which are prepared in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles;
- Check whether each of the items reported in the financial returns is prepared in accordance with the FRR;
- Check whether the financial returns are mathematically accurate; and
- Check whether all adjustments made after the first submitted financial returns are appropriately incorporated into the revised financial returns.

**407108.** There is a requirement in the compliance report to state whether the auditor is aware of any instances where the licensed corporation has contravened the FRR during the year. However, the auditor is not required to perform any procedures to search for instances of contravention of the FRR. The work of auditor was limited to reporting contraventions identified during the normal course of audit. If the licensed corporation has a very low excess liquid capital or is prone to material computational or classification errors this may lead to the auditor deciding to review and test a larger sample of FRR throughout the year. Those material errors may also need to be reported as a breach.

**408109.** The auditor is required to give an opinion as to whether the financial returns referred to in paragraph **406107** above which have been submitted to the SFC have been correctly compiled from the records of the licensed corporation, or if not correctly compiled, the nature and extent of the incorrectness. This involves the auditor in examining the licensed corporation's compilations by reference to the FRR, paying particular attention to those areas most susceptible to management's discretion. Particular care will be exercised in cases where the licensed corporation is operating at a level close to the minimum requirement, since any shortfall (however small) is a contravention of the FRR and results in a higher possibility of window dressing. The auditor would note that the Securities and Futures (Accounts and Audit) Rules do not provide that immaterial discrepancies or reclassifications can be disregarded. Accordingly, the auditor qualifies its opinion where discrepancies and reclassifications are identified in the financial returns regardless of materiality.

**409110.** If the auditor qualifies its compliance report in respect of the financial returns, the auditor either provides the reconciliations or explains the differences. The reconciliations or explained differences are attached to the compliance report.

**440111.** In particular the auditor would check that the reconciliation agrees back to supporting documentation and that the explanations given for any reconciling items are reasonable. Reconciling items commonly relate to audit adjustments made after the first submitted financial returns.

**444112.** It is common for a licensed corporation to submit revised financial returns if errors are noted following the original submission in order to avoid a qualified compliance report. An auditor should ensure that the financial returns the auditor is commenting on in the compliance report is clearly identified and this should be the latest financial returns submitted to the SFC prior to the date of the compliance report. In such case the auditor may include a reconciliation to report discrepancies between the audited financial returns and the first submitted financial returns in the Audit Questionnaire.

***Securities and Futures (Client Securities) Rules and Securities and Futures (Client Money) Rules***

**442113.** There are two aspects to the auditor's reporting responsibilities for client assets: (including scheme assets where applicable):

- a.** ~~a.~~ whether during the financial year under review, the regulated entity had systems of control in place that were adequate to enable compliance with the relevant sections of the client asset rules; and



~~b.~~ ~~b.~~—whether during the financial year under review, the regulated entity complied with the relevant sections of the client asset rules.

~~443~~114. Guidance on the control objectives and audit evidence is set out in Appendix 1 to this PN. The auditor applies judgment in determining the extent and nature of its work which is based on the following general requirements:

~~a.~~ ~~a.~~—the auditor understands the business of the regulated entity and the environment in which the regulated entity operates;

~~b.~~ ~~b.~~—the auditor reviews the regulated entity’s systems and consider whether these are adequate for control and accounting purposes, and are in accordance with the requirements set out in the Control Techniques for Client Asset Rules; and

~~c.~~ ~~c.~~—the auditor tests those systems and controls to establish that they are operating effectively.

~~444~~115. As outlined above, the auditor’s work on client assets (including scheme assets) will be planned in relation to following reporting requirements:

a. For client securities and scheme securities, the main areas that need to be addressed by the auditor, to enable it to fulfill its reporting requirements, are:

i. whether during the financial year under review, the regulated entity had adequate systems of control in place to ensure compliance with the sections ~~[4(4), 5, 10(1)]~~<sup>6</sup>, [9B, 10A(1)]<sup>7</sup> and 12 of the Client Securities Rules;

ii. whether during the financial year under review, the regulated entity has complied with sections ~~[4(4), 5, 10(1)]~~<sup>6</sup>, [9B, 10A(1)]<sup>7</sup> and 12 of the Client Securities Rules; and

iii. whether during the financial year under review, the regulated entity has complied with ~~section~~sections ~~[3, 4]~~<sup>6</sup>, [3A or 44A]<sup>7</sup> of the Keeping of Records Rules to the extent that they relate to client securities, relevant CIS property and scheme securities, where applicable.

b. For client money and scheme money, the main areas that need to be addressed by the auditor, to enable it to fulfil its reporting requirements are:

i. whether during the financial year under review, the ~~regulated entity~~associated entity of an intermediary or licensed corporation had systems of control in place that were adequate to ensure compliance with sections ~~[4, 5, 6, 8(4), 10]~~<sup>6</sup>, [10B, 10C, 10D]<sup>7</sup> and 11 of the Client Money Rules, where applicable;

ii. whether during the financial year under review, the regulated entity has complied with sections ~~[4, 5, 6, 8(4), 10]~~<sup>6</sup>, [10B, 10C, 10D]<sup>7</sup> and 11 of the Client Money Rules; and

iii. whether during the financial year under review, the regulated entity has complied with ~~section~~sections ~~[3, 4]~~<sup>6</sup>, [3A or 44A]<sup>7</sup> of the Keeping of Records Rules to the extent that they relate to client money, relevant CIS property and scheme money, where applicable.

~~445~~116. The control objectives that a regulated entity administering or holding client assets ~~or~~(including scheme assets where applicable), client securities collateral and relevant CIS property will need to meet and the evidence that may be available to the auditor upon which it can base its

<sup>6</sup> Applicable to licensed corporations or associated entities of intermediaries other than in conduct of Type 13 regulated activity.

<sup>7</sup> Applicable to licensed corporations in conduct of Type 13 regulated activity or associated entities of intermediaries in conduct of Type 13 regulated activity. As it relates to associated entities of intermediaries in conduct of Type 13 regulated activity, section 4A of the Keeping of Records Rules cover only scheme assets (i.e. scheme money and scheme securities). For licensed corporations in conduct of Type 13 regulated activity, refer to footnote 1 for the scope covered under section 3A of the Keeping of Records Rules.

conclusions are outlined in Appendix 1 to this PN. They are only indicative and will not be applicable to all regulated entities holding client money, assets (including scheme assets where applicable), especially smaller ones.

416117. When planning and carrying out its work, the auditor must always keep in mind the need for audit evidence in relation to the existence of client assets (including scheme assets) and the accuracy of the regulated entity's records.

417118. Certain licensed corporations do not receive or hold client money or client securities either by choice or by limitation of their licensing condition. It would therefore not normally be necessary for the auditor to make reference to the client asset rules in the compliance report. However, the auditor would ensure that such licensed corporations have procedures in place to avoid receipt or holding of client assets. If during the course of the performance of these procedures (as set out in paragraphs 65-6788 - 90 of Appendix 1 to this PN) it comes to the auditor's attention that the licensed corporation has held client assets, it would be necessary for the auditor to make reference to the licensed corporation's compliance with the client asset rules in the compliance report.<sup>6</sup>

### **Qualified Compliance Reports**

418119. The auditor may qualify its compliance report on grounds other than those which arise in reporting on whether the financial statements give a true and fair view. Where the requirements of the rules upon which the auditor must report have not been met, its report includes a statement specifying the relevant requirements and the respect in which they have not been met, in sufficient detail for the breach or shortcoming to be clearly understood and evaluated. In particular, where the breach relates to a specific rule, the rule number or reference will be stated in the compliance report.

419120. In considering any matter indicating a possible breach of the FRR, client asset rules and the Securities and Futures (Keeping of Records) Rules or inadequate systems of control over client assets or scheme assets for a licensed corporation licensed for Type 13 regulated activity, the auditor analyzes the circumstances in order to identify its cause, and establish the action management has taken or intends to take to correct the matter.

420121. If the auditor proposes to include any qualification or adverse statement in the compliance report (or its report on the financial statements), the form and content of the report should comply with the requirements of HKSAE 3000 (Revised). Section 157(1)(b) of the SFO, requires the auditor, as soon as reasonably practicable after it first proposes the inclusion of the qualification or adverse statement, to lodge with the SFC a report. Details are set out in Part V of this PN.

421122. The Securities and Futures (Accounts and Audit) Rules do not provide that trivial breaches can be disregarded. Where small exceptions are discovered, the auditor will need to qualify its opinion, although references can be made to the extent of the breach.

## PART IV - OTHER REPORTING CONSIDERATIONS

### Audit Questionnaire

422123. In order to assist the SFC to carry out its functions of supervising licensed corporations, the auditor would normally on a voluntary basis complete an Audit Questionnaire for submission to the SFC, providing information in relation to the completed audit that is not readily available from the audited financial statements.

423124. Section 158 of the SFO allows the auditor to provide such information to the SFC without the breaching of any duty of confidentiality to the licensed corporations.

424125. The auditor would complete the Audit Questionnaire based on information obtained during the course of its audit of the financial statements covered by the Audit Questionnaire. The SFC does not expect the auditor to extend the scope of its work in order to complete the Audit Questionnaire.

### Account Disclosure Document

425126. The SFC has issued the Account Disclosure Document for Licensed Corporation which sets out additional financial information to be disclosed by licensed corporations. In the Audit Questionnaire the auditor is requested by the SFC to state whether the auditor is satisfied that no material inconsistency between the audited financial statements and the additional disclosure of financial information as required by the Account Disclosure Document for Licensed Corporation came to its attention. If the auditor is aware of any material inconsistencies, the auditor states details of such inconsistencies in the Audit Questionnaire.

### Cessation of Activities

426127. Where a licensed corporation ceases to carry on all of the regulated activities for which it is licensed, or where an associated entity of an intermediary ceases to be such an associated entity, they are required to submit to the SFC certain documents, including the audited financial statements made up to the date of cessation together with the corresponding auditor reports.

427128. The responsibilities of the auditor and the reporting requirements in those audits are generally the same as those discussed in “Part III – Auditor’s Reports under the Securities and Futures (Accounts and Audit) Rules”.

## **PART V - COMMUNICATIONS BETWEEN THE AUDITOR AND THE SECURITIES AND FUTURES COMMISSION**

### **Introduction**

**428129.** This part of the PN is concerned with communications:

- a. by the auditor to the SFC under the obligations established in section 157 of the SFO;
- b. by the auditor to the SFC under the protection of section 158 of the SFO; and
- c. by the SFC to the auditor under section 378(3)(h) of the SFO.

It is also concerned with the related issue of auditor's duty of secrecy under the SFO.

**429130.** Because of the variety of conditions which might be encountered, the guidance in this Part of the PN is necessarily set out only in general terms; the specific actions to be taken in a particular case may vary somewhat in the light of the circumstances. The auditor would be well advised to consult with its lawyers when it encounters such circumstances.

**430131.** Under the SFO the auditor has various statutory responsibilities to report to the SFC. The auditor is automatically protected in making a report in discharge of such a statutory responsibility. Certain provisions of the SFO also provide the auditor with immunity from any liability it might otherwise incur by reason of the auditor making other reports to the SFC which it may consider to be relevant to the functions of the SFC. These responsibilities and avenues available for reporting do not require the auditor to change the scope of its audit work, nor the frequency or timing of its visits.

**431132.** When the circumstances where reporting may be appropriate are being considered, it should be noted that investments in financial markets carry inherent risks. It is not the purpose of the SFO, nor the duty of the auditor, to protect the investors from the normal risks relating to such investment activities.

**432133.** The auditor needs to bear in mind that its decision may have to stand up to examination at a future date on the basis of the following considerations:

- a. what it knew at the time;
- b. what it should have known in the course of its audit;
- c. what it should have concluded; and
- d. what it should have done.

The auditor should report to the SFC under section 157 of the SFO promptly and not postpone reporting the breaches until the issuance of the audit report or the compliance report. In addition, taking into account the factors raised above, the auditor should report under section 157 of the SFO in sufficient detail to enable the SFC to understand the nature and circumstances of the situation.

### **The auditor to lodge report with the SFC in certain cases**

#### **Sections 157(1)(b) and 157(2) of the SFO**

**433134.** The auditor has a statutory duty to lodge a report with the SFC in the following circumstances:

- a. if it decides to include in its audit report any qualification or adverse statement (SFO section 157(1)(b)). Such a written report is required to be lodged with the SFC as soon as reasonably

practicable after the auditor first proposes the inclusion of the qualification or adverse statement; and

- b. if it resigns before the expiration of its term of office, intends not to seek re-appointment or otherwise cease to be the auditor (SFO section 157(2)). Such a notice in writing to notify the SFC is required within one business day of the event, outlining the reasons and any connected circumstances which the auditor considers should be brought to the attention of the SFC or state the fact where there are no such circumstances.

### Section 157(1)(a) of the SFO

**434135.** Section 157(1)(a) of the SFO provides that the auditor shall lodge a written report with the SFC, as soon as reasonably practicable after it becomes aware of any “reportable matter”. A reportable matter is defined in section 157(3) of the SFO as:

- a. any matter which in the auditor’s opinion adversely affects the financial position of the regulated entity to a material extent; or
- b. a failure of the regulated entity to comply with any rules made under section 148, 149 or 151 of the SFO or a failure of the licensed corporation to comply with section 146 of the SFO or with any of the requirements of the FRR that apply to it.

**435136.** These are statutory obligations and this Part of the PN provides the auditor with procedures to follow when such circumstances arise.

**436137.** Section 157(3) of the SFO includes a failure by the regulated entity to comply with any “prescribed requirement” as a “reportable matter”. In addition to the requirements under any of the rules made under sections 148, 149 and 151 of the SFO, it also refers to the requirements under any of the rules made under section 152 of the SFO (provision of contract notes, receipts, statements of account and notifications by intermediaries and their associated entities). It should be noted that the requirements under any of the rules made under section 152 of the SFO are not included as “matters reportable by the auditor under section 157 of the SFO” in section 5 of the Securities and Futures (Accounts and Audit) Rules and therefore the auditor is not required to report to the SFC if there is a failure of the regulated entity to comply with section 152 of the SFO.

#### *Reporting criterion under section 157(1)(a) of the SFO*

**437138.** The auditor would take the initiative and ensure that a written report on the reportable matter under section 157(1)(a) of the SFO is lodged with the SFC if the conditions specified in paragraph **434135** above exist. A distinction must be drawn here between an auditor’s duty as stated in paragraph **434135(a)** and paragraph **434135(b)** above. The duty under paragraph **434135(b)** is clear and unequivocal: if the auditor becomes aware of a contravention of the requirements which are specified, it is not given any latitude for exercising judgment. The auditor is obliged to make a report. The duty under paragraph **434135(a)** is different. The auditor is given the right to form an opinion based on applying criteria as to the materiality of an adverse effect on the regulated entity’s financial position in deciding whether reporting would be appropriate.

**438139.** The HKICPA has developed a criterion for use by the auditor in deciding to take the initiative in lodging a written report with the SFC under paragraph **434135(a)** above. The criterion is that the auditor would lodge a written report with the SFC when it considers it expedient to do so in order for the SFC to protect the interests of investors because there has been a material loss or there exists a significant risk of material loss.

**439140.** This criterion can be more fully explained as follows:

- a. ~~a.~~—there must be a significant adverse occurrence or a change in the auditor’s perception of an existing situation, that may include an adverse change in the circumstances of the business; and

- b. the situation described in (a) above has given rise to or has indicated that a reasonable probability exists that it may give rise to:
  - i. a material financial loss to the business which would result in a material deterioration of the licensed corporation's liquid capital position under the FRR; or
  - ii. loss of control over the assets or records.

~~140~~141. Examples of the circumstances encountered in which the situation set out in paragraphs ~~138~~139 and ~~139~~140 may be met include:

- a. the auditor discovers a failure by the regulated entity to comply with the provisions of the SFO which may have material consequences; or
- b. there is evidence of imminent financial loss of serious proportions which might cast doubt on the continuing viability of the regulated entity.

*Reporting procedures under section 157(1)(a) of the SFO*

~~141~~142. In circumstances where the auditor concludes that a written report under section 157(1)(a) of the SFO to the SFC is necessary, it would adopt the following procedures, bearing in mind that speed may be of the essence:

- a. The auditor would discuss the matter with the regulated entity (unless the matter relates to suspected or actual instance of fraud and serious misconduct by the management itself) and explain the auditor's statutory duty to lodge a written report with the SFC under section 157(1)(a) of the SFO and that it might be advisable for the regulated entity to make a report direct to the SFC immediately.
- b. The auditor would then immediately lodge a written report with the SFC. The auditor would follow this with a written notification along with a copy of its report to the directors or management to inform them.

~~142~~143. The auditor would note that lodging a written report with the SFC alone may not discharge all its responsibilities. For example, the auditor would consider the implications of the matter giving rise to the report under section 157(1)(a) of the SFO for its opinion on the financial statements, and its conclusions in the compliance report.

## Other communications by the auditor

### Statutory protection under section 158 of the SFO

~~143~~144. Section 158 (1) of the SFO provides that:

"... no duty which a person may be subject to as an auditor ... shall be regarded as contravened by reason of his communicating in good faith to the Commission ..., whether or not in response to a request made by the Commission ..., any information or opinion on a matter which (a) he becomes aware of in his capacity as such auditor (whether or not in the course of performing his functions as such auditor); and (b) is relevant to any function of the Commission ...".

~~144~~145. Section 158 of the SFO only gives immunity for the auditor appointed under section 153 of the SFO. It does not cover appointments under section 159 or 160 of the SFO which give the power of appointment to the SFC. However it does extend the immunity to:

- a. an auditor who has ceased to be the auditor but became aware of a matter before his appointment ceased (SFO section 158(2)(a));
- b. an auditor appointed by a former regulated entity (SFO section 158(2)(b)); and

- c. an auditor who has ceased to be the auditor of a former regulated entity before his appointment ceased (SFO section 158(2)(c)).

**445146.** Section 158 of the SFO does not lay down any rules nor specify the circumstances in which the auditor is to communicate any matter to the SFC. They provide a mechanism whereby the auditor may make matters known to the SFC with statutory protection from its duty of confidentiality.

**446147.** This Part of the PN contains guidance on the circumstances in which matters may be brought to the attention of the SFC by way of a report with statutory protection which falls outside those matters which the auditor is obliged to report (see paragraphs **433134** to **442143** above). In interpreting this guidance, the auditor would bear in mind the fundamental objectives of the SFO, which are to ensure that the SFC is able to fulfil its function of safeguarding the interests of investors. The auditor would have regard to any function of the SFC as summarized in section 5 of the SFO.

**447148.** Confidentiality is an implied term of auditor's contract with its client, but in certain circumstances and under conditions specified in section 158 of the SFO it does not prevail, since the auditor of a regulated entity is entitled to communicate in good faith to the SFC information or opinion on a matter which it becomes aware of in its capacity as the auditor of the regulated entity and is relevant to any function of the SFC, without the duty of confidentiality owed to the client being regarded as having been contravened.

**448149.** The matters which may be communicated under section 158 of the SFO depend on the functions of the SFC. Any matters relevant to any of its functions under the SFO may be communicated to the SFC.

**449150.** Matters which may be reported under the protection of section 158 of the SFO will only arise in circumstances other than where the auditor is under a statutory duty to report under section 157 of the SFO. Considerable care needs to be taken in disclosing matters arising during any tripartite meeting with the SFC as the auditor's knowledge of these matters may have been obtained while assisting the SFC rather than in its capacity as the auditor (see paragraph **453154** below).

**450151.** Examples of circumstances in which the auditor may communicate any matter to the SFC under section 158 of the SFO include:

- a. the auditor considers investors have incurred, or are at significant risk of incurring, a material loss as a result of the regulated entity carrying on business in a manner that is not fit and proper;
- b. there is evidence of:
  - i. fraud, dishonesty or serious incompetence; or
  - ii. serious failure to observe rules for the conduct of the regulated entity;
- c. it has come to the attention of the auditor that the procedures, records or systems fail significantly to comply with, or to demonstrate compliance with, conduct of business requirements to which the regulated entity is subject (except in respect of client assets (including scheme assets where applicable) which are covered in section 157 of the SFO); and
- d. the position is such that because of a significant risk which is material to the collective interests of investors, the investors' interests would be better safeguarded if the SFC were aware of the position, even if only to organize protective action.

**454152.** Clearly the potential nature of matters which may be reported is very wide, but as explained in paragraph **454155** below this does not, of itself, require the auditor to extend the scope of its work in order to discover matters and it will only be in exceptional circumstances such as those described in paragraphs **464165** and **465166** that it may choose to seek statutory protection.



452153. Any protected communication can be made either on the auditor's initiative or in response to a request from the SFC for information. The auditor would cooperate with the SFC and respond to any requests from the SFC for information, provided it has no reason to doubt that the request is relevant to the SFC's functions. The auditor may communicate a matter to the SFC with the protection of section 158 of the SFO regardless of the source of that information, provided it became aware of the matter in its capacity as the auditor of the regulated entity and it does so in good faith.

453154. Matters of which the auditor becomes aware "in its capacity as the auditor" may not be restricted to those matters identified during the course of the audit work by the auditor and members of the audit team. The auditor or members of the audit team may become aware of a matter which is relevant to the functions of the SFC during the course of its carrying out work for the regulated entity other than audit work or through private discussions on social or other occasions, in which case the information will be known to them as individuals. In circumstances which suggest that a matter would be reported to the SFC if knowledge of it had been obtained in the capacity as the auditor, it would be prudent to make enquiries in the course of the audit work in order to establish whether this is the case from information obtained in this capacity. In addition, a matter which is relevant to the functions of the SFC and which is identified during the course of work for the regulated entity by another partner (or member of staff) such as a management consultant or tax partner may be deemed to be known to the auditor (see also paragraph 454155 below).

454155. The auditor cannot be expected to be aware of all circumstances which, had it known of them, would have led them to exercise its right to communicate under section 158 of the SFO. This section does not require the auditor to change the scope of its audit or other work for the regulated entity, nor the frequency or timing of its visits. The auditor has no obligation to seek out grounds for making a report under section 158 of the SFO, the section does not place an obligation on the auditor to conduct its work in such a way that there is reasonable certainty that it will discover a matter upon which the SFC may need to act. It is only when the auditor does become aware in the ordinary course of this work of such a matter, or of circumstances which suggest the existence of such a matter, that it would consider using the protection of section 158 of the SFO.

455156. The SFC recognizes that it would not be appropriate for the auditor to report information which it has obtained or matters which it has identified through its professional relationship with another client, even though the information obtained or the matters identified may relate to a regulated entity.

456157. The auditor would need to realize that section 158 of the SFO will not provide protection where it could be held to have acted maliciously or in bad faith or if the information reported is outside the scope of the section. The SFO does not, therefore, provide complete immunity from all types of legal action by all parties affected, or subsequently affected, by their action in reporting to the SFC. The auditor would consider taking legal or other professional advice before making the decision whether or in what manner to report and in order, for example, to ensure that the form and content of its report are such as to secure the protection of section 158 of the SFO and that it only includes relevant material.

457158. The auditor is protected, however, even if the information which it communicates subsequently falls short of proof, or the opinion which it communicates cannot be verified. The auditor who can demonstrate that it has acted reasonably and in good faith in informing the SFC of any information or opinion on a matter which it thinks has occurred would not be held in breach of duty to its client even if, after an investigation, it ~~were~~ was found there was not a matter which needed to be reported. These are areas where the auditor may wish to consider taking legal advice before making a report.

458159. Whilst no breach of statutory duty might arise, it should be appreciated that there is no protection given by the SFO if the auditor, after becoming aware of an occurrence, fails to report, promptly, or at all, to the SFC. Furthermore, the auditor would need to recognize that speed of reporting is likely to be important in order to enable the SFC to protect the interests of investors.



### **Tripartite meetings**

**459160.** As part of the SFC's system of supervision of regulated entities, meetings involving the SFC, the regulated entity and its auditor may be called by either the SFC, or the regulated entity possibly at the auditor's suggestion.

**460161.** In such meeting, the auditor would be expected to discuss with the SFC the affairs of the regulated entity including:

- a. the presentation and content of the financial statements;
- b. the scope, conduct and outcome of the annual audit;
- c. the scope, conduct and outcome of any report under section 158 of the SFO;
- d. any points raised in the management letter which relate to the SFO;
- e. explanations for, the reason for and nature of a qualified auditor's report or of a change in a previously reported intention to qualify an auditor's report;
- f. any step or course of action which may be necessary in the light of the reports, for example, the commissioning of a more detailed report in a particular area (under section 159 or 160 of the SFO); and
- g. matters raised by the SFC or those which the regulated entity or the auditor have drawn to its attention since any previous meeting, including how such matters have been resolved to the satisfaction of the auditor or have been reflected or treated in the financial statements.

### **Reporting via the regulated entity**

**464162.** Where the auditor becomes aware of a matter which, in its professional judgment, it considers is not required to be reported under section 157 of the SFO but ought to be reported to the SFC, it would consider the facts and, unless inappropriate in the circumstances (described in paragraph **464165** below), discuss the matter with the management.

**462163.** It is important for the auditor to act in a manner that will maintain its professional relationship with its client. Normally, therefore, the auditor would ask the regulated entity to draw matters about which it is concerned to the attention of the SFC.

**463164.** Where the regulated entity will not itself inform the SFC of a matter, having been advised to do so by the auditor, or where it has not been done within the period of time specified, or where there is no adequate evidence that the client has properly reported the matter in question, the auditor would make such a report direct to the SFC.

### **Reporting direct to the SFC**

**464165.** In exceptional circumstances, where the auditor doubts whether management is fit and proper person to carry on business as a regulated entity and it would be in the interest of protecting investors that the management of the regulated entity would not be informed in advance, the auditor would report direct to the SFC after first considering the appropriateness of taking independent legal advice. Examples of these circumstances include:

- a. where there has been an occurrence which causes the auditor no longer to have confidence in the integrity of the directors or senior management, e.g. where it believes that a fraud or other irregularity has been committed by the directors or senior management of the regulated entity, or it has evidence of the intention of directors or senior management to commit such a fraud or other irregularity; or
- b. where there has been an occurrence which causes the auditor no longer to have confidence that the directors or senior management will conduct the business of the regulated entity in

a prudent manner so as to protect the interests of investors, e.g. where it has discovered that the directors or senior management are acting in an irresponsible or reckless manner with respect to the affairs of the business or its clients, or it has evidence of their inclination so to act.

**465166.** The auditor would also report direct to the SFC when speed is of the essence. For example, when it becomes aware that the regulated entity may be about to cease being licensed, the auditor would consider the need to disclose to the SFC any information in its possession relevant to its functions without delay. The fact of such impending cessation of licence may bring forward the desirability of disclosing matters to the SFC, as it is easier for the SFC to take appropriate action while the entity is still licensed, particularly where such matters bear on the security of third party interests.

## The auditor's duty of secrecy

**466167.** Section 378 of the SFO imposes a duty of secrecy upon any "specified person", within the meaning of that term in section 378(15). The auditor is bound by the duty of secrecy once it performs any function under or carries into effect any of the provisions of the SFO or assists another person in the performance of any function under or in carrying into effect any such provisions.

**467168.** The precise scope of an auditor's statutory duty of secrecy is not definitive but is likely to include:

- a. any matter which, in the auditor's opinion, adversely affects the financial position of the regulated entity to a material extent and which is the subject of a written report by the auditor to the SFC (SFO section 157(1)(a)) and the contents of that written report;
- b. any evidence of the regulated entity's failure to comply with any rules made under section 148, 149 or 151 of the SFO, or any evidence of the licensed corporation's failure to comply with section 146 of the SFO or with any of the requirements of the FRR that apply to it, which is the subject of a written report by the auditor to the SFC (SFO section 157(1)(a)) and the contents of that written report;
- c. the auditor's decision to resign before the expiration of its term of office, the auditor's decision not to seek re-appointment, or if the auditor otherwise ceases to be the auditor, and any reason for such decision which is communicated to the SFC under section 157(2) of the SFO;
- d. any reason for including any qualification or adverse statement in the auditor's report on the regulated entity's financial statements (SFO section 157(1)(b)) which is communicated to the SFC to the extent that such reason is not self-evident from the contents of the report itself;
- e. any communication by the auditor to the SFC under section 158 of the SFO, which is a communication of information or opinion on a matter which is relevant to any function of the SFC of which it becomes aware in its capacity as the auditor, whether or not it is at the time of such communication still the auditor of the regulated entity concerned; and
- f. any communication by the SFC to the auditor under section 378(3)(h) of the SFO (see paragraphs ~~472—474~~**173 - 175** below).

**468169.** Application of section 378 of the SFO would therefore prevent the auditor from communicating any matters such as those referred to in paragraph **467168** above to any parties other than the SFC except under certain circumstances as discussed in paragraphs **469170** and **470171** below in relation to the matters mentioned in paragraph **467168**(c) above. It should be emphasised that application of section 378 of the SFO would also prevent the auditor from communicating information that is subject to the duty of secrecy to the regulated entity concerned except for information which the regulated entity already knows.

**469170.** Section 417 of the Companies Ordinance states that a person may resign from the office of auditor by giving the company a notice in writing that is accompanied by a statement required to be given under section 424. Section 424 states that a person who resigns from office must on the resignation, give the company (a) if the person considers that there are circumstances connected

with the resignation that should be brought to the attention of the company's members or creditors, a statement of those circumstances; or (b) if the person considers that there are no such circumstances, a statement to that effect. Section 425(1) requires the same statement to be given where the auditor retires or is removed from office except for the conditions as stated in 425(3). Thus, the incoming auditor and members or creditors of a regulated entity may be informed by the outgoing auditor regarding its reasons to resign, not to seek re-appointment or otherwise cease to be the auditor. Disclosure of such information by the outgoing auditor of a regulated entity under the provisions of the Companies Ordinance is permitted under section 378(2)(e) of the SFO without breaching the duty of secrecy under section 378 of the SFO since the disclosure is made in accordance with a law.

470171. In complying with a request by the incoming auditor to provide professional clearance which is required under HKICPA Code of Ethics for Professional Accountants, the outgoing auditor may communicate the matters referred to in paragraph 467168(c) to the incoming auditor. The outgoing auditor is considered to be doing this for the purposes of carrying into effect the provisions of section 153 of the SFO in order that the incoming auditor can accept nomination as the auditor of the regulated entity under section 153 of the SFO.

474172. Under this PN, the auditor would prepare two auditor's reports separately in respect of reporting on the financial statements (see paragraph 9394 above) and compliance reporting (see paragraphs 94-95-96 above). Since the compliance report by the auditor is for filing with the SFC only and should not be made available to any other parties including the shareholders of the regulated entity, the auditor can disclose any contraventions by the regulated entity of the requirements referred to in paragraph 467168(b) in the compliance report without breaching the duty of secrecy under section 378 of the SFO.

### **Communications by the SFC to the auditor under section 378(3)(h) of the SFO**

472173. Section 378(3)(h) of the SFO empowers the SFC to disclose confidential information to the auditor of regulated entities for the purpose of enabling or assisting the SFC to perform its functions under the SFO without the consent of the person from whom it is received or to whom it relates. It should be noted that disclosure by the SFC of confidential information to the auditor is to the auditor only; it is not free to pass that information to others, such as the regulated entity in question without the consent in writing of the SFC.

473174. The SFC will generally take the initiative in bringing a matter to the attention of the auditor of a regulated entity under the provisions of section 378(3)(h) of the SFO if it considers disclosure is necessary to enable or assist the SFC to perform its functions under the SFO. Where the SFC discloses confidential information to the auditor under section 378(3)(h) of the SFO, it will generally inform the auditor whether it has informed the regulated entity's management of the matter and, if so, whom.

474175. If the auditor is not informed by the SFC of any such matter, it is entitled to assume that the SFC has no such disclosure to make. Accordingly, there is no need for the auditor to request the SFC to confirm this.

## APPENDIX 1 - CLIENT ASSETS

### INTRODUCTION

1. This Appendix provides more detailed guidance to the auditor on the work normally carried out in order to form an opinion on client assets (including scheme assets where applicable) in the auditor's reporting under the SFO. It provides guidance on the following rules:
  - a. Securities and Futures (Client Securities) Rules (Client Securities Rules);
  - b. Securities and Futures (Client Money) Rules (Client Money Rules);
  - c. Securities and Futures (Keeping of Records) Rules (Keeping of Records Rules); and
  - d. Securities and Futures (Accounts and Audit) Rules.

For the purpose of this Appendix the term "rules" means any of the above applicable rules.

2. The main purpose of the rules in relation to client assets (including scheme assets) is to ensure that the regulated entity safeguards client assets- (including scheme assets where applicable). A further purpose is to ensure that, in the event of insolvency of the regulated entity, client assets are protected from the claims of its general creditors and, in the case of client money, from any right of set off by institutions which hold the money.
3. The rules require a regulated entity to maintain a high standard of custodianship and associated record keeping. Management of a regulated entity is responsible for establishing and maintaining adequate accounting records and systems and controls. In this regard, the SFC has issued guidance to licensed corporations in the Control Techniques for Client Asset Rules. This recognizes the position of trust under which client assets are held.
4. This Appendix is separated into three sections as follows:
  - A. client securities; and scheme securities;
  - B. client money and scheme money; and
  - C. no client assets.

The sections on client securities and scheme securities and client money and scheme money also set out the relevant planning considerations.

5. This Appendix is to assist the auditor in determining the scope of the work for each individual audit. However it is not intended to limit or replace individual professional judgment, initiative and vigilance. Regulated entities vary in business type, structure, process and size. There is no standard approach but audit procedures should be designed to meet the requirements of the particular situation, giving careful consideration to the specific circumstances. This is a matter that requires the exercise of professional judgment in the light of the circumstances of each particular case.
6. Where the auditor discovers that the systems have failed or material differences have arisen, it considers the implications these may have on other areas of its work, on its reporting obligations and, in particular, on the "truth and fairness" of the financial statements.

**A. CLIENT SECURITIES AND SCHEME SECURITIES**

**Part I - Introduction**

7. Client securities, for the purpose of the Client Securities Rules, are securities that are:
- a. either
    - i. listed or traded on a recognised stock market; or
    - ii. interests in a collective investment scheme authorized by the SFC under section 104 of the SFO; and
  - b. received or held in Hong Kong by or on behalf of
    - i. a licensed corporation in the course of the conduct of any regulated activity for which the licensed corporation is licensed; or
    - ii. an associated entity of an intermediary in relation to the conduct of any regulated activity.

~~These~~ 8. Scheme securities may be, for the purpose of the Client Securities Rules, are client securities that are:

- a. either
  - i. listed or traded on a recognised stock market; or
  - ii. interests in a collective investment scheme authorized by the SFC under section 104 of the SFO; and
- b. in relation to an intermediary
  - i. received or held in Hong Kong by or on behalf of the intermediary in the course of the conduct of Type 13 regulated activity; or
  - ii. received or held in Hong Kong by or on behalf of any corporation which is in a controlling entity relationship with an intermediary, in relation to the conduct of Type 13 regulated activity,

constituting relevant CIS property in respect of a relevant CIS.

9. Scheme documents, in relation to a relevant CIS, means –
- a. if the relevant CIS is constituted in the form of collateral trust – the trust deed constituting or governing the relevant CIS;
  - b. if the relevant CIS is constituted in any other form – the documents governing the formation or constitution of the relevant CIS; and
  - c. other documents setting out the requirements relating to –
    - i. the custody and safekeeping of any relevant CIS property; or
    - ii. the oversight of the operations of the relevant CIS.

10. The Client Securities Rules do not apply to client securities of a licensed corporation that are in an account established and maintained by a client of the licensed corporation, in that client's name, with a person other than the licensed corporation or an associated entity of the licensed

corporation.<sup>1</sup> The Client Securities Rules do not apply to client securities (including scheme securities) that are received or held outside Hong Kong by a licensed corporation or its associated entity.

~~911.~~ Part II of Section A does not apply to a licensed corporation licensed for Type 13 regulated activity or an associated entity of the licensed corporation in relation to the conduct by the licensed corporation of that regulated activity.

~~12.~~ Part III of Section A applies only to a licensed corporation licensed for Type 13 regulated activity or an associated entity of the licensed corporation in relation to the conduct by the licensed corporation of that regulated activity.

~~13.~~ For the particular regulated activity, the auditor needs to understand what may constitute client securities that are covered by the Client Securities Rules. It would consider all situations and transaction types that may be entered into by the regulated entity. Although the regulated entity may consider that a particular area is not covered by the rules relating to client securities, the auditor needs to be alert to situations where this is incorrect and the regulated entity is in breach of the Client Securities Rules as a result.

### Control objective

~~40.~~ 14. The control objectives that a regulated entity administering or holding client securities or securities collateral will need to meet and the evidence that may be available to the auditor upon which it can base its conclusions are outlined below. They are only indicative.

~~44.~~ 15. Not every regulated entity, particularly a smaller one, will be able to meet all these objectives through the establishment of formal controls and segregation of duties. In consequence, not all the evidence indicated below will be available in every case.

~~4216.~~ This does not necessarily mean that the regulated entity has weak controls or that there is insufficient evidence for the auditor to give a conclusion. The regulated entity may well have adequate controls due to close supervision by the management, taking into account the low volume of client securities handled.

~~4317.~~ In some cases, therefore, the auditor may place greater reliance on observation and enquiry for its audit evidence than inspection of documentation. In doing so, it needs to bear in mind that undocumented systems are more prone to error and fraud, and that its presence and enquiries may influence the manner in which procedures are operated at that time.

---

<sup>1</sup> This does not apply to -

(a) an intermediary licensed or registered for Type 13 regulated activity; or

(b) an associated entity of the intermediary, in relation to the conduct by the intermediary of that regulated activity.

**Part II – Client securities received or held by Licensed Corporations other than in the Conduct of Type 13 Regulated Activity and their Associated Entities**

**Adequate systems of control - Timely renewal of standing authorities (section 4(4))**

**Control objectives - Timely renewal of standing authorities**

**4418.** The main factors that will be considered are:

- a. satisfactory arrangements for ensuring that standing authorities that are due for renewal are identified;
- b. satisfactory arrangements for notifying clients that their standing authorities are due to expire and informing them that unless clients object, they will be renewed upon the same terms and conditions; and
- c. satisfactory notification to clients of the renewal of the standing authorities within the specified time frame.

**Evidence - Timely renewal of standing authorities**

**4519.** The main factors that will be considered are:

- a. retention of client standing authorities in a secure environment;
- b. tracking system for timely identification of standing authorities that are approaching expiry;
- c. management review of standing authority renewal notices prior to despatch;
- d. client relationship personnel follow up expiring standing authorities with clients to ensure they have received notifications;
- e. evidence of spot checks of standing authorities by the compliance or internal audit department to ensure that current standing authorities are in place; and
- f. evidence of procedures for ensuring that standing authority renewal notices have been provided within one week after expiry.

**Adequate systems of control - Deposit or registration of client securities and securities collateral (section 5)**

**Control objectives - Deposit or registration of client securities and securities collateral**

**4620.** The main factors that will be considered are:

- a. whether registerable client securities are registered in a name permitted by the rules;
- b. where client securities are deposited in the same name as that used for the intermediary's house positions, that the client securities are deposited in a designated account different from that in which its house positions are deposited;
- c. securities held as collateral can be separately identified;
- d. arrangements for releasing documents under stock lending and borrowing arrangements are in accordance with the rules;
- e. satisfactory arrangements for ensuring that the client securities were held or securities collateral kept after receipt in a segregated account or registered in the name of the client from whom or on whose behalf the client securities have been received, or the intermediary (applicable to securities collateral only) or associated entity;



- f. satisfactory arrangements for ensuring that where client securities and securities collateral are deposited in safe custody, that the financial institutions, custodians or other intermediaries in question are appropriately authorized, approved or licensed as appropriate;
- g. satisfactory arrangements for withdrawal or disposal of client securities and securities collateral to be made to or by the client, or to or by any authorized party as specified in sections 5 and 6 of the Client Securities Rules upon the circumstances or under discretionary powers given in the client agreement;
- h. risk assessments to be carried out on all custodians to assess the risk of placing client securities and securities collateral with a third party;
- i. written arrangements between the intermediary or associated entity and the custodian covering at least the minimum requirements of the rules; and
- j. an adequate system to ensure that statements are sent to clients at required intervals, and that such statements properly reflect the regulated entity's records.

**Evidence - Deposit or registration of client securities and securities collateral**

4721. The main factors that will be considered are:

- a. written instructions from clients stating the manner in which their securities are to be registered; these instructions may be set out in standard client agreements;
- b. written procedures setting out how each security is to be identified so as to reflect the client's entitlement to that security (e.g. registered in the client's name);
- c. where client securities are registered in the name of the intermediary or an associated entity, that an appropriate record of the interests of individual clients is maintained;
- d. clear segregation of client securities from other securities;
- e. separate registers maintained of securities held as collateral;
- f. evidence of appropriate authority to engage in stock lending arrangements, given to the regulated entity by the clients concerned;
- g. separate records of all such transactions sufficient to show the details of the stocks lent at any time and the collateral held;
- h. proper segregation of duties which ensure each area is staffed by people independent of any other operations and password controls;
- i. qualifications and experience of senior management;
- j. strong boxes, fire-proof rooms and safes, restricted access via password controlled doors or limited access to keys, especially where important documents ~~like such as~~ securities certificates, were kept in the office premise;
- k. regular stock reconciliations performed for each stock segregated account against third party supporting documents;
- l. follow up actions taken by the licensed corporation on any reconciling or unusual entries in the stock records, particularly negative stock balances;
- m.l. evidence of spot checks of the custodian area by the compliance or internal audit department;



- n. written procedures stating how custodian staff are to process the movement of securities and what is required in the form of authorization;
- o. evidence of procedures for selection of external financial institutions, custodians or other intermediaries to ensure that they are eligible and suitable to hold client securities and securities collateral in safe custody;
- p. results of a risk assessment process including external information on credit rating, financial results etc. of the custodian and internal information on customer service received;
- q. letters of agreement with custodians stating the terms under which they are operating;
- r. file copies of statements sent to clients, which agree with the records; and
- s. procedures and controls (e.g. completed checklist) to ensure that all clients receive a statement (where required).

**Adequate systems of control - Depositing and transferring client securities and securities collateral (section 10(1))**

~~4822~~. Under section 10(1) of the Client Securities Rules a regulated entity is required to take reasonable steps to ensure that client securities and securities collateral of the intermediary are not:

- i. deposited;
- ii. transferred;
- iii. lent;
- iv. pledged;
- v. repledged; or
- vi. otherwise dealt with,

except as provided in Part 2 of the Client Securities Rules.

The relevant elements of the Client Securities Rules in Part 2 (covering sections 5, 6, 7, 8 and 9) in summary cover the following:

*a. Section 5 - requirements for deposit or registration of client securities and securities collateral*

Unless client securities and securities collateral are registered in the name of the client, or the associated entity (or the intermediary in the case of securities collateral):

- i. client securities are:
  - deposited in safe custody in a segregated account which is designated as a trust account or client account in Hong Kong with an authorized financial institution, an approved custodian or another intermediary licensed for dealing in securities;
- ii. securities collateral is:
  - deposited in safe custody in a segregated account which is designated as a trust account or client account in Hong Kong with an authorized financial institution, an approved custodian or another intermediary licensed for dealing in securities; or

- deposited in an account in the name of the intermediary or associated entity with authorized financial institution, an approved custodian or another intermediary licensed for dealing in securities.

*b. Section 6 - dealings with client securities and securities collateral*

A regulated entity may deal with client securities or securities collateral in accordance with:

- i. an oral or written direction to sell or to settle such a sale order;
- ii. a written direction to withdraw the client securities or securities collateral (where required under section 5);
- iii. a standing authority, except where this will result in:
  - a transfer of client securities or securities collateral to an account in Hong Kong other than an account referred to in section 5 or otherwise result in the intermediary, associated entity or a related corporation of the intermediary having the benefit or use of the client securities or securities collateral;
  - a transfer of the client securities or securities collateral to an officer or employee, unless he is the client in question; or
  - an unconscionable transaction in the sense of the Unconscionable Contracts Ordinance.

Where a licensed corporation is licensed for asset management, with the written agreement of the client, the licensed corporation may withdraw client securities from a trust account or client account, or deal with client securities that have been registered in the name of the client or an associated entity, for the purpose of selling the securities or settling a sale order on behalf of the client.

Where there is a liability owed by or on behalf of a client, with that client's written agreement, a licensed corporation may dispose, or initiate a disposal by any of its associated entities, of any of the client securities or securities collateral in settlement of that liability.

*c. Section 7 - treatment of client securities and securities collateral by intermediaries licensed for dealing in securities and their associated entities*

With a standing authority a licensed corporation licensed for dealing in securities may:

- i. apply any of the securities or securities collateral pursuant to a securities borrowing or lending agreement;
- ii. subject to the requirement of having repledged securities not exceeding 140% of aggregate margin loans, deposit any of the securities collateral in question with an authorized financial institution as collateral for financial accommodation provided; or
- iii. deposit any of the securities collateral in question with a recognised clearing house or another intermediary licensed or registered for dealing in securities as collateral for the discharge and satisfaction of the licensed corporation's settlement obligations and liabilities.

*d. Section 8 - treatment of securities collateral by intermediaries licensed for securities margin financing and their associated entities*

Subject to the requirement of having repledged securities not exceeding 140% of aggregate margin loans, with a standing authority a licensed corporation licensed for securities margin financing may deposit any of the securities collateral that it receives with an authorized

financial institution or an intermediary licensed for dealing in securities as collateral for financial accommodation provided to the licensed corporation.

e. *Section 8A – repledging*

- i. A regulated entity is required to ascertain the closing aggregate market value of the repledged securities collateral for each business day does not exceed 140% of its aggregate margin loan on the same date;
- ii. If such 140% limit has been exceeded on any business day, the regulated entity is required to withdraw any excess to reduce such ratio to below the limit by the end of the next business day.

f. *Section 9 - treatment of securities collateral by intermediaries licensed for dealing in futures contracts and their associated entities*

With a standing authority a licensed corporation licensed for dealing in futures contracts may deposit any of the securities collateral that it receives with a recognised clearing house or an intermediary licensed or registered for dealing in futures contracts as collateral for the discharge and satisfaction of the licensed corporation’s settlement obligations and liabilities.

**Control objectives - Depositing and transferring client securities and securities collateral**

~~4923~~. The control objectives that have been included in paragraph ~~4620~~ above apply here. Additional factors that will be considered are:

- a. written procedures in place covering client dealing and transfer instructions;
- b. controls provide assurance that client instructions are authorized prior to being actioned;
- c. standing authorities are valid and current;
- d. transfers of client securities and securities collateral are made to appropriate authorized accounts;
- e. controls provide assurance that at the end of each business day repledged securities – that exceed 140% of aggregate margin loans are promptly identified and rectification action is taken within the following business day in accordance with the rules; and

~~f.d.~~ where a client has failed to deliver the stock to the licensed corporation to settle his sale order, the securities of other clients are not used to settle the obligations of the client except as provided in Part 2 of the Client Securities Rules.

**Evidence - Depositing and transferring client securities and securities collateral**

~~2024~~. The main factors that will be considered are:

- a. availability of up-to-date written procedures covering the handling of client instructions;
- b. evidence that client instructions are verified as authentic and valid before being actioned;
- c. evidence that client standing orders are checked that they are current and cover the transaction in question each time they are used;
- d. evidence that where appropriate client securities and securities collateral are only transferred to or deposited with authorized financial institutions, approved custodians or other intermediaries licensed for dealing in securities;
- e. where the licensed corporation has both cash clients and margin clients, the auditor should check whether separate designated accounts are maintained;

- f. where client securities are maintained through CCASS or CMU, to determine whether securities received are allocated and transferred to the appropriate account within the timeframe as specified by the rules;
- ~~g.d.~~ whether the licensed corporation has taken effective actions to follow up on any negative stock balance in its stock records and client ledger; and
- ~~h.d.~~ the maximum amount of securities that the licensed corporation is permitted under section 8A of the Client Securities Rules to repledge is calculated on an ongoing basis and compared with the aggregate value of securities actually repledged, and rectification action is carried out within the statutory timeframe for any breach of the limit.

**Adequate accounting records have been maintained**

= **Control objectives - Adequate accounting records have been maintained**

254. The main factors that will be considered are:

- = a. proper and prompt recording of the movements of documents (this includes all documents, including those relating to the regulated entity's own securities as there is a risk of teeming and lading and having client documents mixed with the regulated entity's own documents);
- = b. proper and prompt recording of all purchases and sales of securities on behalf of clients;
- = c. records in agreement with the statements sent to clients of assets held on their behalf;
- = d. reconciliations carried out in accordance with the rules; and
- = e. proper and prompt accounting for benefits, such as bonus or scrip issues accruing to clients.

**Evidence - Adequate accounting records have been maintained**

265. The main factors that will be considered are:

- = a. evidence that documents of title are recorded immediately on receipt;
- = b. evidence that documents of title are not released from the regulated entity's control to clients, registrars, brokers, etc. without the records being amended;
- = c. records kept in respect of any document clearly setting out the date of receipt and despatch of the document, the nature of the document, the client to whom the document relates, and the nature, amount and nominal value of the securities to which the document relates;
- = d. evidence that statements are sent to clients at the required intervals, made up to the appropriate date, and properly specifying the documents held. In this context, the auditor may consider obtaining direct confirmation from clients;
- = e. evidence that correspondence from clients querying statements (including client complaints) and any other queries have been dealt with properly and promptly;
- = f. evidence that benefits such as dividends or scrip issues are collectively and correctly allocated to each client;
- = g. evidence that reconciliations have been carried out in accordance with the rules (for more detailed guidance on reconciliations see paragraphs 39 to 47 below); and
- = h. circularization of account balances in accordance with paragraphs 72 to 80 in Part II of this PN.

**Part III – Scheme securities received or held by Licensed Corporations in the Conduct of Type 13 Regulated Activity and their Associated Entities**

**Adequate systems of control – Identification of relevant CIS (section 9B)**

**Control objectives - Identification of relevant CIS**

27. The main factor that will be considered is the satisfactory arrangements for ensuring that relevant CIS are identified.

**Evidence - Identification of relevant CIS**

28. The main factors that will be considered are:

- a. retention of scheme documents in a secure environment; and
- b. evidence of procedures for ensuring that relevant CIS are identified.

**Adequate systems of control - Deposit or registration of scheme securities (section 9B)**

**Control objectives - Deposit or registration of scheme securities**

29. The main factors that will be considered are:

- a. whether registerable scheme securities are registered in a name permitted by the rules;
- b. where scheme securities are deposited in the same name as that used for the intermediary's house positions, that the scheme securities are deposited in a designated account different from that in which its house positions are deposited;
- c. arrangements for releasing documents under stock lending and borrowing arrangements are in accordance with the rules;
- d. satisfactory arrangements for ensuring that the scheme securities were held in a segregated account or registered in the name of the relevant CIS or associated entity on behalf of the relevant CIS;
- e. satisfactory arrangements for ensuring that where scheme securities are deposited in safe custody, that the financial institutions, custodians or other intermediaries in question are appropriately authorized, approved or licensed as appropriate;
- f. satisfactory arrangements for withdrawal or disposal of scheme securities to be made to or by the relevant CIS, or to or by any authorized party as specified in sections 9B and 9C of the Client Securities Rules upon the circumstances or in any provisions of the scheme documents of the relevant CIS;
- g. risk assessments to be carried out on all custodians to assess the risk of placing scheme securities with parties other than the licensed corporation; and
- h. written arrangements between the intermediary or associated entity and the custodian covering at least the minimum requirements of the rules.

**Evidence - Deposit or registration of scheme securities**

3029. The main factors that will be considered are:

- a. scheme documents from relevant CIS stating the manner in which their securities are to be registered;

- b. written procedures setting out how each security is to be identified so as to reflect the relevant CIS's entitlement to that security (e.g. registered in the relevant CIS's name);
- c. where scheme securities are registered in the name of an associated entity of the intermediary, that an appropriate record of the interests of individual relevant CIS is maintained;
- d. clear segregation of scheme securities from other securities;
- e. separate registers maintained of securities held as collateral;
- f. evidence of appropriate authority to engage in stock lending arrangements, in accordance with written instructions related to the specified scheme securities in respect of a relevant CIS, which does not contravene any provisions of the scheme documents of the relevant CIS;
- g. separate records of all such transactions sufficient to show the details of the stocks lent at any time and the collateral held;
- h. proper segregation of duties which ensure each area is staffed by people independent of any other operations and password controls;
- i. qualifications and experience of senior management;
- j. strong boxes, fire-proof rooms and safes, restricted access via password controlled doors or limited access to keys, especially where important documents such as securities certificates, were kept in the office premise;
- k. regular stock reconciliations performed for each stock segregated account against third party supporting documents;
- l. follow up actions taken by the licensed corporation on any reconciling or unusual entries in the stock records, particularly negative stock balances;
- m. evidence of spot checks of the custodian area by the compliance or internal audit department;
- n. written procedures stating how custodian staff are to process the movement of securities and what is required in the form of authorization;
- o. evidence of procedures for selection of external financial institutions, custodians or other intermediaries to ensure that they are eligible and suitable to hold scheme securities in safe custody;
- p. results of a risk assessment process including external information on credit rating, financial results etc. of the custodian and internal information on customer service received; and
- q. letters of agreement with custodians stating the terms under which they are operating.

**Adequate systems of control - Depositing and transferring scheme securities (section 10A(1))**

31. Under section 10A(1) of the Client Securities Rules a regulated entity is required to take reasonable steps to ensure that scheme securities of the intermediary are not:
- i. deposited;
  - ii. transferred;
  - iii. lent;
  - iv. pledged;

- v. repledged; or

- vi. otherwise dealt with,

- except as provided in Part 2A of the Client Securities Rules.

The relevant elements of the Client Securities Rules in Part 2A (covering sections 9B, and 9C) in summary cover the following:

- a. Section 9B - requirements for deposit or registration of scheme securities

Unless scheme securities are registered in the name of the relevant CIS, or the associated entity on behalf of the relevant CIS, scheme securities are deposited in safe custody in a segregated account which is designated as a trust account or client account in Hong Kong with an authorized financial institution, an approved custodian or another intermediary licensed for dealing in securities.

- b. Section 9C - dealings with client securities

A regulated entity may deal with scheme securities in accordance with:

- i. a written instruction to settle an order to sell scheme securities executed on behalf of the relevant CIS; or

- ii. a written instruction to withdraw the scheme securities from an account referred to in section 9B(a) or to deal with scheme securities that have been registered in accordance with section 9B(b).

### **Control objectives - Depositing and transferring scheme securities**

32. The control objectives that have been included in paragraph 29 above apply here. Additional factors that will be considered are:

- a. written procedures in place covering relevant CIS dealing and transfer instructions;

- b. controls provide assurance that written instructions related to specified scheme securities in respect of a relevant CIS are authorized prior to being actioned and do not contravene any provisions of the scheme documents of the relevant CIS;

c. transfers of scheme securities are made to appropriate authorized accounts; and

d. controls provide assurance that the scheme securities of one relevant CIS are not used to settle the obligations of another relevant CIS.

### **Evidence - Depositing and transferring scheme securities**

33. The main factors that will be considered are:

- a. availability of up-to-date written procedures covering the handling of written instructions related to specified scheme securities in respect of a relevant CIS;

b. evidence that written instructions related to specified scheme securities in respect of a relevant CIS are verified as authentic and valid before being actioned;

- c. evidence that where appropriate scheme securities are only transferred to or deposited with authorized financial institutions, approved custodians or other intermediaries licensed for dealing in securities;

- d. where scheme securities are maintained through CCASS or CMU, to determine whether securities received are allocated and transferred to the appropriate account within the timeframe as specified by the rules; and
- e. whether the licensed corporation has taken effective actions to follow up on any negative stock balance in its stock records and ledger of a relevant CIS.

#### **Adequate accounting records have been maintained**

##### **Control objectives - Adequate accounting records have been maintained**

34. The main factors that will be considered are:

- a. proper and prompt recording of the movements of documents (this includes all documents, including those relating to the regulated entity's own securities as there is a risk of teeming and lading and having documents related to relevant CIS mixed with the regulated entity's own documents);
- b. proper and prompt recording of all the movements of scheme securities received or held on behalf of relevant CIS;
- c. reconciliations carried out in accordance with the rules; and
- d. proper and prompt accounting for benefits, such as bonus or scrip issues accruing to relevant CIS.

##### **Evidence - Adequate accounting records have been maintained**

35. The main factors that will be considered are:

- a. evidence that documents of title are recorded immediately on receipt;
- b. evidence that documents of title are not released from the regulated entity's control to registrars, brokers, etc. without the records being amended;
- c. records kept in respect of any document clearly setting out the date of receipt and despatch of the document, the nature of the document, the relevant CIS to whom the document relates, and the nature, amount and nominal value of the securities to which the document relates;
- d. evidence that benefits such as dividends or scrip issues are collectively and correctly allocated to each relevant CIS;
- e. evidence that reconciliations have been carried out in accordance with the rules (for more detailed guidance on reconciliations see paragraphs 39 to 47 below); and
- e. circularization of scheme securities in accordance with paragraphs 72 to 80 in Part II of this PN (where applicable).



**Part IV – Miscellaneous**

**Adequate systems of control - Reporting of non-compliance with certain provisions of the rules (section 12)**

**Control objectives - Reporting of non-compliance with certain provisions of the rules**

**2436.** The main factors that will be considered are:

- a. system in place to identify potential incidents of non-compliance with the rules;
- b. potential incidents of non-compliance reported to management on a timely basis; and
- c. matters of non-compliance (a reportable matter as defined in section 157 of the SFO) are reported to the SFC in writing within one business day.

**Evidence - Reporting of non-compliance with certain provisions of the rules**

**2237.** The main factors that will be considered are:

- a. evidence that the business has a system in place to identify potential incidents of non-compliance with the rules;
- b. level of awareness amongst staff of the rules;
- c. records kept in relation to potential incidents of non-compliance demonstrating that these have been reported to management on a timely basis; and
- d. evidence that matters of non-compliance have been reported to the SFC in writing within one business day.

**Compliance with the rules**

**2338.** The work that the auditor will have performed as outlined above in relation to determining whether during the financial year under review, the regulated entity had adequate systems of control in place to ensure compliance with the applicable sections 4(4), 5, 9B, 10(1), 10A(1) and 12 of the Client Securities Rules is likely to also enable it to report on whether during the financial year under review, the regulated entity has complied with the applicable sections 4(4), 5, 9B, 10(1), 10A(1) and 12 of the Client Securities Rules.

Depending on the results of the work on the systems of control, some additional testing is likely to be required to enable the auditor to issue its opinion on the regulated entity’s compliance with the rules during the financial year under review.

The auditor would consider obtaining written representations from management that all incidents of non-compliance with the rules have been disclosed, or that there have been no incidents of non-compliance.

**Adequate accounting records have been maintained**

~~Control objectives – Adequate accounting records have been maintained~~

~~24. The main factors that will be considered are:~~

- ~~a. proper and prompt recording of the movements of documents (this includes all documents, including those relating to the regulated entity’s own securities as there is a risk of toeming and lading and having client documents mixed with the regulated entity’s own documents);~~
- ~~b. proper and prompt recording of all purchases and sales of securities on behalf of clients;~~

- ~~e. records in agreement with the statements sent to clients of assets held on their behalf;~~
- ~~d. reconciliations carried out in accordance with the rules; and~~
- ~~e. proper and prompt accounting for benefits, such as bonus or scrip issues accruing to clients.~~

**~~Evidence – Adequate accounting records have been maintained~~**

~~25. The main factors that will be considered are:~~

- ~~a. evidence that documents of title are recorded immediately on receipt;~~
- ~~b. evidence that documents of title are not released from the regulated entity's control to clients, registrars, brokers, etc. without the records being amended;~~
- ~~c. records kept in respect of any document clearly setting out the date of receipt and despatch of the document, the nature of the document, the client to whom the document relates, and the nature, amount and nominal value of the securities to which the document relates;~~
- ~~d. evidence that statements are sent to clients at the required intervals, made up to the appropriate date, and properly specifying the documents held. In this context, the auditor may consider obtaining direct confirmation from clients;~~
- ~~e. evidence that correspondence from clients querying statements (including client complaints) and any other queries have been dealt with properly and promptly;~~
- ~~f. evidence that benefits such as dividends or scrip issues are collectively and correctly allocated to each client;~~
- ~~g. evidence that reconciliations have been carried out in accordance with the rules (for more detailed guidance on reconciliations see paragraphs 26 to 34 below); and~~
- ~~h. circularisation of account balances in accordance with paragraph 80 above.~~

**Reconciliations**

**2639.** The requirement to carry out reconciliations is set out in the Keeping of Records Rules. Further guidance on client asset reconciliation is set out in the Control Techniques for Client Asset Rules.

*Control objectives - Reconciliation of client securities - Physically held client securities*

**2740.** The main factors that will be considered are:

- a. physical counts and reconciliations of all securities performed with at least the frequency and in the manner required by the rules, and by staff (in so far as possible) independent of the custodian department;
- b. procedures planned and implemented to ensure that the count of client title documents is accurate;
- c. timely clearance of reconciling items; and
- d. records retained of the dates and results of the physical counts.

*Evidence - Reconciliation of client securities - Physically held client securities*

**2841.** The main factors that will be considered are:

- a. detailed instructions for the counts;

- b. an independent function (such as compliance department or internal audit) organizing, controlling or participating in carrying out the counts and reconciliations;
- c. sufficient time and resources devoted to the counts and reconciliations;
- d. full and clear documentation of the counts and reconciliations;
- e. counts carried out at the frequency and with the time limits required by the rules;
- f. adequate explanations for reconciling items; and
- g. completion of reconciliations (i.e. all items explained).

*Control objectives - Reconciliation of client securities - Client securities held by a custodian or scheme securities held by a global custodian or a sub-custodian*

~~20. The main factors that will be considered are:~~

-

42. The main factors that will be considered are:

-

- a. reconciliations for all client securities held by custodians performed or scheme securities held by global custodians or sub-custodians performed with at least the frequency and in the manner required by the rules and the Control Techniques for Client Asset Rules;
- b. timely clearance of reconciling items;
- c. the reconciliations undertaken by a person who is not involved with the recording or movement of the assets, if the size of the regulated entity permits this segregation of duties; and
- d. records retained of the dates and results of reconciliations including confirmations from external custodians- (for a licensed corporation licensed for Type 13 regulated activity: authorized financial institutions, approved custodians and other intermediaries licensed for dealing in securities).

*Evidence - Reconciliation of client securities - ~~client~~Client securities held by a custodian or scheme securities held by a global custodian or a sub-custodian*

3043. The main factors that will be considered are:

- a. an independent function carrying out the reconciliations;
- b. sufficient time and resources devoted to reconciliations;
- c. full and clear documentation of the reconciliations;
- d. reconciliations carried out at the frequency required by the rules;
- e. adequate explanations for reconciling items; and
- f. completion of reconciliations (i.e. all items explained).

3144. Where client securities are physically held by the regulated entity itself, the auditor may attend part or all of one of the physical counts of client title documents. In reaching a conclusion regarding the extent to which this is necessary, the auditor considers the strength of controls surrounding, and the independence of, the count, reconciliation, day to day processing and custody of client documents of title.

3245. The auditor examines confirmations from independent custodians of documents of title held by them.

| 3346. The auditor inspects correspondence and agreements with custodians in order to verify compliance with the rules.

| 3447. In larger regulated entities, a rolling reconciliation basis of confirming client title documents (similar to a manufacturing company's system of perpetual stock-taking) is sometimes adopted. Care must be taken to ensure that systems and controls are in place to prevent teeming and lading.

## B. CLIENT MONEY AND SCHEME MONEY

### Part I - Introduction

**3548.** The Client Money Rules apply to client money of a licensed corporation that is received or held by or on behalf of:

- a. the licensed corporation, in the course of the conduct of any regulated activity for which the licensed corporation is licensed; or
- b. an associated entity of the licensed corporation where such an associated entity is not an authorized financial institution, in relation to such conduct of the regulated activity.

The Client Money Rules do not therefore apply to associated entities of registered institutions. The reference to “regulated entity” in this section below is therefore restricted to a licensed corporation or its associated entity that is not an authorized financial institution.

**3649.** The Client Money Rules do not apply to client money (including scheme money) of a licensed corporation that is received or held outside Hong Kong by the licensed corporation or an associated entity of the licensed corporation.

**3750.** The Client Money Rules do not apply to client money of a licensed corporation that is in a bank account established and maintained by a client of the licensed corporation in that client’s name.

**3851.** Paragraph 50 and Part II of this section do not apply to a licensed corporation licensed for Type 13 regulated activity or an associated entity of the licensed corporation in relation to the conduct by the licensed corporation of that regulated activity.

**52.** Part III of this section applies only to a licensed corporation licensed for Type 13 regulated activity or an associated entity of the licensed corporation in relation to the conduct by the licensed corporation of that regulated activity.

**53.** For the particular regulated entity, the auditor needs to understand what may constitute client money that is covered by the Client Money Rules. It would consider all situations and transaction types that may be entered into by the regulated entity. Although the regulated entity may consider that a particular area is not covered by the rules relating to client money, the auditor needs to be alert to situations where this is incorrect and the regulated entity is in breach of the Client Money Rules as a result.

### **Segregated accounts**

**3954.** When a regulated entity holds or expects to hold client money or scheme money in respect of a relevant CIS, it must open one or more segregated accounts, each of which shall be designated as a trust account or client account. These must be established and maintained with:

- a. an authorized financial institution; or
- b. any other institution approved by the SFC for the purposes of the Client Money Rules, either generally or in a particular case.

### **Control Objective**

**4055.** The control objectives that the auditor would expect to see in a regulated entity holding client money and the evidence from which the auditor seeks to draw reasonable conclusions are outlined below. They are only indicative and will not be applicable to all regulated entities holding client money, especially smaller ones.

**Part II – Client money received or held by Licensed Corporations other than in the Conduct of Type 13 Regulated Activity and their Associated Entities**

**Adequate systems of controls - Payment of client money into segregated accounts (section 4)**

**4456.** Client money held by the regulated entity has to be held on trust for clients in one or more segregated bank accounts designated as a trust account or client account.

**Control objectives - Payment of client money into segregated account**

**4257.** The main factors that will be considered are:

- a. all client money is paid within one business day into a segregated account;
- b. bank accounts opened only with an authorized financial institution, or any other institution approved by the SFC for the purposes of the Client Money Rules;
- c. bank accounts include “Client Account” or “Trust Account” in their description in accordance with section 4(1) of the Client Money Rules;
- d. appropriate statements, confirmations and agreements sent to and received from the authorized financial institutions;
- e. systems are adequate to identify all client money;
- f. systems are adequate to ensure that all client money and only client money is paid in compliance with the rules (other than where it is specifically allowed by the rules);
- g. systems are adequate to ensure that all client money is paid in promptly; that is within one business day, unless otherwise disposed of in accordance with the rules; and
- h. client money is only applied for the purposes of the client to whom it relates.

**Evidence - Payment of client money into segregated accounts**

**4358.** The main factors that will be considered are:

- a. clear internal instructions setting out the procedures to be followed in dealing with any potential client money;
- b. suitable levels of staff (i.e. with the appropriate training and experience) responsible for establishing segregated accounts and identifying client money within the regulated entity;
- c. lodgements regularly and promptly made;
- d. lodgements to segregated accounts comprise client money only, except as otherwise permitted;
- e. lodgements to non-client accounts do not include client money;
- f. an up to date list of all bank accounts which identifies those that are segregated accounts; and
- g. bank statements agreeing to the regulated entity’s records.

**Adequate systems of controls - Payment of client money out of segregated accounts (section 5)**

**Control objectives - Payment of client money out of segregated accounts**

**4459.** The main factors that will be considered are:

- a. systems are adequate to ensure that all client money withdrawals in Hong Kong are made in compliance with the rules; and
- b. all withdrawals from segregated accounts are made only for prescribed purposes and in accordance with the rules.

**Evidence - Payment of client money out of segregated accounts**

~~4560.~~ The main factor that will be considered is:

- a. withdrawals are properly authorized and for purposes approved by the rules.

**Adequate systems of controls - Treatment of interest on client money held in segregated accounts (section 6)**

~~4661.~~ The Client Money Rules require that interest derived from client money is held in a segregated account. To the extent that any amount of interest retained in a segregated account which the regulated entity is entitled to retain under an agreement with the client(s), this would be paid out of the account within one business day after the interest is credited to the account or the regulated entity becomes aware that the interest has been credited to the account.

**Control objectives - Treatment of interest on client money held in segregated accounts**

~~4762.~~ The main factors that will be considered are:

- a. appropriate procedures in place for identifying and withdrawing regulated entity's entitlement of interest on segregated accounts on a timely basis;
- b. where applicable, interest paid on all money subject to interest calculations; and
- c. interest payments correctly calculated by reference to the appropriate dates.

**Evidence - Treatment of interest on client money held in segregated accounts**

~~48. The main factors that will be considered are:~~

-

632. The main factors that will be considered are:

=

- a. evidence that regulated entity's interest entitlements are withdrawn on a timely basis in accordance with the rules; and
- b. schedules showing how interest due to clients has been calculated (or equivalent computer processes).

**Adequate systems of control - Timely renewal of standing authorities (section 8(4))**

**Control objectives - Timely renewal of standing authorities**

~~4964.~~ The main factors that will be considered are:

- a. satisfactory arrangements for ensuring that standing authorities that are due for renewal are identified;
- b. satisfactory arrangements for notifying clients that their standing authorities are due to expire and informing them that unless clients object, they will be renewed upon the same terms and conditions; and
- c. satisfactory notification to clients of the renewal of the standing authorities within the specified time frame.

**Evidence - Timely renewal of standing authorities**

**5065.** The main factors that will be considered are:

- a. retention of client standing authorities in a secure environment;
- b. tracking system for timely identification of standing authorities that are approaching expiry;
- c. management review of standing authority renewal notices prior to despatch;
- d. client relationship personnel follow up expiring standing authorities with clients to ensure they have received notifications;
- e. evidence of spot checks of standing authorities by the compliance or internal audit department to ensure that current authorities are in place; and
- f. evidence of procedures for ensuring that standing authority renewal notices have been provided within one week after expiry.

**Adequate systems of controls - Requirement to pay money other than client money out of segregated accounts (section 10)**

**5166.** The Client Money Rules require that a regulated entity which becomes aware that it is holding an amount of money in a segregated account that is not client money of the regulated entity shall, within one business day of becoming so aware, pay that amount of money out of the segregated account.

**Control objectives - Requirement to pay money other than client money out of segregated accounts**

**5267.** The main factor that will be considered is appropriate procedures in place for identifying and withdrawing regulated entity's money from segregated accounts on a timely basis.

**Evidence - Requirement to pay money other than client money out of segregated accounts**

**5368.** The main factor that will be considered is evidence that regulated entity's money is withdrawn on a timely basis in accordance with the rules.



**Part III – Scheme money received or held by Licensed Corporations in the Conduct of Type 13 Regulated Activity and their Associated Entities**

**Adequate systems of controls - Payment of scheme money into segregated accounts and relevant CIS accounts (section 10B)**

69. In general, scheme money held by the regulated entity for a relevant CIS must be kept on trust in one or more segregated accounts designated as a trust account or client account for a relevant CIS (as detailed in section 10B(1) – (4)); however, if a relevant CIS is in the form of an open-ended fund company or any other corporate form, scheme money held for the relevant CIS may be kept in one more relevant CIS account for the relevant CIS (as detailed in section 10B(5) – (7)).

**Control objectives - Payment of scheme money into segregated account and relevant CIS accounts**

70. The main factors that will be considered are:

- a. the satisfactory arrangements for ensuring that relevant CIS are identified;
- b. all scheme money received in accordance with the rules is paid within three business days into a segregated account in respect of the relevant CIS or a relevant CIS account for a relevant CIS that is constituted in the form of an open-ended fund company (or other corporate form) except for circumstances as detailed in section 10B(8)(a) – (c) of the Client Money Rules or in accordance with a written instruction required under section 10E of the Client Money Rules;
- c. segregated accounts and relevant CIS accounts opened only with an authorized financial institution, or any other institution approved by the SFC for the purposes of the Client Money Rules;
- d. segregated accounts include “Client Account” or “Trust Account” in their description in accordance with section 10B(1) of the Client Money Rules;
- e. relevant CIS account opens only in the name of the relevant CIS in accordance with section 10A of the Client Money Rules;
- f. each segregated account or relevant CIS account for scheme money must be established and maintained for only 1 relevant CIS, including its sub-fund(s) or separated segregated accounts and relevant CIS accounts for scheme money may be established and maintained in respect of the relevant CIS and each of its sub-fund(s);
- g. appropriate statements, confirmations and agreements sent to and received from the authorized financial institutions;
- h. systems are adequate to identify all scheme money;
- i. systems are adequate to ensure that all scheme money and only scheme money is paid in compliance with the rules (other than where it is specifically allowed by the rules);
- j. systems are adequate to ensure that all scheme money is paid in promptly; that is within three business days, unless otherwise disposed of in accordance with the rules; and
- k. scheme money is only applied for the purposes of the relevant CIS to which it relates.

**Evidence - Payment of scheme money into segregated accounts and relevant CIS accounts**

71. The main factors that will be considered are:

- a. evidence of procedures for ensuring that relevant CIS are identified;

- b. clear internal instructions setting out the procedures to be followed in dealing with any potential scheme money and the requirements of establishing segregated accounts or relevant CIS accounts for each relevant CIS;
- c. suitable levels of staff (i.e. with the appropriate training and experience) responsible for establishing segregated accounts or relevant CIS accounts and identifying scheme money within the regulated entity;
- d. lodgements regularly and promptly made;
- e. lodgements to segregated accounts or relevant CIS accounts comprise scheme money only, except as otherwise permitted;
- f. lodgements to all other accounts do not include scheme money (for the purpose of this subparagraph, "all other accounts" includes accounts in relation to other relevant CISs, non-relevant CISs and non-client accounts);
- g. an up to date list of all bank accounts which identifies those that are segregated accounts and relevant CIS accounts; and
- h. bank statements agreeing to the regulated entity's records.

**Adequate systems of controls - Payment of scheme money out of segregated accounts and relevant CIS accounts (section 10C)**

**Control objectives - Payment of scheme money out of segregated accounts and relevant CIS accounts**

72. The main factors that will be considered are:

- a. systems are adequate to ensure that all scheme money withdrawals are made in compliance with the rules; and
- b. all withdrawals from segregated accounts or relevant CIS accounts are made only for prescribed purposes and in accordance with the rules.

**Evidence - Payment of scheme money out of segregated accounts and relevant CIS accounts**

73. The main factor that will be considered is:

- a. withdrawals are properly authorized and for purposes approved by the rules.

**Adequate systems of controls - Treatment of interest on scheme money held in segregated accounts and relevant CIS accounts (section 10D)**

74. The Client Money Rules require that scheme money in respect of a relevant CIS must deal with amounts of interest derived from the holding of the scheme money in a segregated account or a relevant CIS account in accordance with section 10C(1) of the Client Money Rules that must not pay it out of the account unless it is paid for the purposes approved by the rules.

**Control objectives - Treatment of interest on scheme money held in segregated accounts and relevant CIS accounts**

75. The main factors that will be considered are:

- a. appropriate procedures in place for identifying of and dealing with interest on segregated accounts or relevant CIS accounts on a timely basis;
-

b. where applicable, interest paid on all money subject to interest calculations; and

c. interest payments correctly calculated by reference to the appropriate dates.

-

**Evidence - Treatment of interest on scheme money held in segregated accounts and relevant CIS accounts**

76. The main factors that will be considered are:

-

a. clear internal instructions setting out the procedures to be followed in identifying of and dealing with interest on segregated accounts or relevant CIS accounts in accordance with the rules; and

-

b. schedules showing how interest due to the relevant CIS has been calculated (or equivalent computer processes) and recorded.

## **Part IV – Miscellaneous**

### **Adequate systems of control - Reporting of non-compliance with certain provisions of the rules (section 11)**

#### **Control objectives - Reporting of non-compliance with certain provisions of the rules**

**5477.** The main factors that will be considered are:

- a. system in place to identify potential incidents of non-compliance with the rules;
- b. potential incidents of non-compliance reported to management on a timely basis; and
- c. matters of non-compliance (a reportable matter as defined by section 157 of the SFO) are reported to the SFC in writing within one business day.

#### **Evidence - Reporting of non-compliance with certain provisions of the rules**

**5578.** The main factors that will be considered are:

- a. evidence that the regulated entity has a system in place to identify potential incidents of non-compliance with the rules;
- b. level of awareness amongst staff of the rules;
- c. records kept in relation to potential incidents of non-compliance demonstrating that these have been reported to management on a timely basis; and
- d. evidence that matters of non-compliance have been reported to the SFC in writing within one business day.

### **Compliance with the rules**

**5679.** The work that the auditor will have performed as outlined above in relation to determining whether during the financial year under review, the regulated entity had adequate systems of control in place to ensure compliance with the applicable sections 4, 5, 6, 8(4), 10, 10B, 10C, 10D and 11 of the Client Money Rules is likely to also enable them to report on whether during the financial year under review, the regulated entity has complied with the applicable sections 4, 5, 6, 8(4), 10, 10B, 10C, 10D and 11 of the Client Money Rules.

Depending on the results of the work on the systems of control, some additional testing is likely to be required to enable the auditor to issue its conclusion on the regulated entity's compliance with the rules during the financial year under review.

The auditor would consider obtaining written representations from management that all incidents of non-compliance with the rules have been disclosed, or that there have been no incidents of non-compliance.

### **Adequate accounting records have been maintained**

#### **Control objectives - Adequate accounting records have been maintained**

**5780.** The main factors that will be considered are:

- a. proper recording of movements of client money and scheme money;
- b. interest credited in accordance with the rules;
- c. reconciliations carried out in accordance with the rules; and
- d. appropriate titles are given to accounts.

### Evidence - Adequate accounting records have been maintained

5881. The main factors that will be considered are:

- a. for non-Type 13 regulated activity, adequate details of the day to day entries of money paid into and out of the segregated accounts and individual client accounts including:
  - i. dates of receipts and payments;
  - ii. name of the client;
  - iii. name of the person from whom money was received or to whom it was paid, if other than the client;
  - iv. sub-ledgers with individual client accounts; and
  - v. evidence of designation from a client;
- b. for Type 13 regulated activity, adequate details of the day to day entries of money paid into and out of the trust account, client account or relevant CIS account for each relevant CIS including:
  - i. dates of receipts and payments;
  - ii. name of the relevant CIS;
  - iii. name of the person from whom money was received or to whom it was paid, if other than the relevant CIS;
  - iv. sub-ledgers with each relevant CIS; and
  - v. evidence of designation from a relevant CIS;

c.

- ~~b.~~ records of the interest earned on the segregated accounts, (for Type 13 regulated activity), the determination of the amount of interest payable to clients or relevant CIS (for Type 13 regulated activity) and the dates and amounts of interest paid/credited to clients; or relevant CIS (for Type 13 regulated activity);
- ~~ed.~~ records maintained on a timely basis;
- ~~ee.~~ evidence that reconciliations have been carried out as required and reconciling items have been investigated and cleared promptly (for more detailed guidance on reconciliations see paragraphs 5982 to 6487 below);
- ~~ef.~~ the records maintained comply with the guidance given by the SFC;
- ~~fg.~~ to provide third party evidence of client balances (except settlement balances), the auditor may consider obtaining direct confirmation from clients; in practice, this may be conveniently combined with testing the accuracy of statements of their securities sent to clients; and
- ~~gh.~~ circularization of account balances and scheme money (where applicable) in accordance with paragraphs 7772 to 7980 in Part II of this PN.

### Reconciliations

5982. The requirement to carry out reconciliations is set out in the Keeping of Records Rules.

~~6083~~. A regulated entity that holds client money and/or scheme money or controls a relevant CIS account is required to reconcile each month any differences during that month in its balances or positions with any of its associated entities and other parties, including:

- a. recognised exchange companies;
- b. clearing houses;
- c. other intermediaries;
- d. custodians; and
- e. banks,

and show how such differences were resolved.

*Control objectives – Reconciliation*

~~6484~~. The main factors that will be considered are:

- a. client/trust money or scheme money per the segregated account, as recorded by the regulated entity, ~~is and the scheme money per the relevant CIS account, as recorded by relevant CIS that is constituted in the form of an open-ended fund company or any other corporate form, are~~ reconciled with the total of balances recorded as due to each client (except for Type 13 regulated activity) or each relevant CIS (for Type 13 regulated activity) at least each month;
- b. balance of each such segregated account or relevant CIS account, as recorded by the regulated entity, ~~and relevant CIS account, as recorded by the relevant CIS that is constituted in the form of an open-ended fund company or any other corporate form, are~~ reconciled with the relevant bank statements;
- c. the reconciliations are properly prepared and adequate explanations given for reconciling items, which would be cleared without delay; and
- d. records are retained of the dates and results of the reconciliations.

*Evidence – Reconciliation*

~~62. The main factors that will be considered are:~~

-

~~85. The main factors that will be considered are:~~

-

- a. an up-to-date list of the segregated accounts or relevant CIS accounts held that agrees with the segregated accounts or relevant CIS accounts being reconciled;
- b. evidence of an independent preparation and review of these reconciliations; and
- c. reconciliations being carried out regularly over the financial year under review.

~~6386~~. The auditor carries out normal audit tests on bank reconciliations. Particular attention will be paid to reconciling items, ensuring that outstanding and uncleared items are properly identified and are duly cleared shortly after the reconciliation. As part of its substantive testing, the auditor examines and where appropriate obtain direct confirmation of bank balances from each bank concerned.

~~6487~~. The regulated entity would also reconcile its segregated bank accounts and relevant CIS accounts held on behalf of the relevant CIS that is constituted in the form of an open-ended fund company or any other corporate form as often as necessary but at least once every month. Some

regulated entities need to reconcile segregated bank accounts and relevant CIS accounts daily if the volume of business-transactions is high.

**C. NO CLIENT ASSETS<sup>2</sup>**

**6588.** The auditor must be alert to a situation where a licensed corporation is not permitted under its licensing condition to hold client assets or does not, as a matter of policy, hold client assets. Where this is the case, the licensed corporation would have systems in place to avoid receiving and holding client assets.

**6689.** Although the auditor is not required to give the SFC independent assurance that the licensed corporation has not administered or held client assets, it still considers carrying out the following procedures:

**a.** ~~a.~~ enquire as to what arrangements a licensed corporation has in place to ensure that relevant staff are aware of what constitutes client assets. This could be documented in a procedural manual or internal memorandum and would outline the procedures to be followed if client assets are identified;

**b.** ~~b.~~ enquire as to how settlements are effected on behalf of clients (reference will be made to client documentation and payment instructions on contract notes or statements);

**c.** review the cash book in order to confirm that receipts and payments in the cash book only relate to the licensed corporation's own money and that no client money is being received or held;

**d.** review the licensed corporation's client files to see whether they provide any indication that it has held client assets in order to undertake a particular transaction;

**e.** review client agreements for statements of how custody is to be operated; as a corollary, review the agreements with any custodians used and the counterparty files (i.e. the documentation which supports the securities transactions) for correspondence on settlement procedures to ensure that there is no evidence that the licensed corporation has controlled or held client assets;

**f.** ~~f.~~ ascertain whether a system of review exists to ensure that client assets are not administered or held. This could constitute periodic review by the internal auditor or compliance officer and encompasses substantive review of the licensed corporation's bank and custodian accounts and client agreements;

**g.** ~~g.~~ enquire as to details of any client assets the licensed corporation has received and the action taken; and

**h.** ~~h.~~ review the complaints log for any indication that the licensed corporation has held client assets.

The auditor should be alert to findings from the above procedures which may indicate that the licensed corporation has held client assets. In such circumstances, the auditor should refer to the guidance in paragraph **7374** in Part II of this PN and consider to send confirmations to the licensed corporation's clients. In addition, the auditor should refer to the guidance in Part V of this PN and consider to report to the SFC.

**6790.** The auditor will consider obtaining written representations from management that the licensed corporation has not breached any rules relating to the client assets during the financial year under review.

<sup>2</sup> In general, this section is not applicable to a licensed corporation licensed for Type 13 regulated activity.



## APPENDIX 2 - EXAMPLES OF AUDITOR'S REPORTS

### Example 1 - auditor's report on financial statements - regulated entity

For purposes of this illustrative auditor's report, the following circumstances are assumed:

- Audit of a complete set of financial statements of an entity other than a listed entity<sup>1</sup> incorporated in Hong Kong using Hong Kong Financial Reporting Standards (HKFRSs). The audit is not a group audit (i.e., HKSA 600 (Revised)<sup>2</sup> does not apply).
- The financial statements are prepared by the directors of the entity in accordance with HKFRSs (a general purpose framework<sup>3</sup>).
- The terms of the audit engagement reflect the description of the directors' responsibility for the financial statements in HKSA 210.
- The auditor has concluded an unmodified (i.e., "clean") opinion is appropriate based on the audit evidence obtained.
- The relevant ethical requirements that apply to the audit are those of the Hong Kong Institute of Certified Public Accountants' *Code of Ethics for Professional Accountants*.
- Based on the audit evidence obtained, the auditor has concluded that a material uncertainty does not exist related to events or conditions that may cast significant doubt on the entity's ability to continue as a going concern in accordance with HKSA 570 (Revised).
- The auditor is not required, and has otherwise not decided, to communicate key audit matters in accordance with HKSA 701<sup>4</sup>.
- The auditor has obtained all of the other information<sup>5</sup> prior to the date of the auditor's report and has not identified a material misstatement of the other information.
- Those responsible for oversight of the financial statements differ from those responsible for the preparation of the financial statements.
- In addition to the audit of the financial statements, the auditor has other reporting responsibilities required under the Securities and Futures (Keeping of Records) Rules and Securities and Futures (Accounts and Audit) Rules of the Securities and Futures Ordinance in addition to the Companies Ordinance.

#### INDEPENDENT AUDITOR'S REPORT

To the Members of ABC Securities Limited  
(incorporated in Hong Kong with limited liability)<sup>6</sup>

#### Report on the Audit of the Financial Statements

##### Opinion

We have audited the financial statements of ABC Securities Limited ("the Company") set out on pages ..... to....., which comprise the statement of financial position as at 31 December 20X1,<sup>7</sup> and

<sup>1</sup> See HKSA 700 (Revised), *Forming an Opinion and Reporting on Financial Statements* for illustrations of auditor's reports for listed entities.

<sup>2</sup> HKSA 600 (Revised), *Special Considerations—Audits of Group Financial Statements (Including the Work of Component Auditors)*

<sup>3</sup> HKSA 700 (Revised), *Forming an Opinion and Reporting on Financial Statements*, paragraph 7(b)

<sup>4</sup> HKSA 701, *Communicating Key Audit Matters in the Independent Auditor's Report*

<sup>5</sup> HKSA 720 (Revised), *The Auditor's Responsibilities Relating to Other Information*, paragraph 12(c)

<sup>6</sup> In Hong Kong, it is a common practice to disclose the place of incorporation of the company.

<sup>7</sup> For cessation audits (see paragraph 426.127), reference to the financial year end date in this example report should be changed to the cessation date of the licensed corporation's regulated activities.

[the statement of profit or loss and]<sup>8</sup> the statement of profit or loss and other comprehensive income, statement of changes in equity and statement of cash flows for the year then ended, and notes to the financial statements, including material accounting policy information.

In our opinion, the financial statements give a true and fair view of the financial position of the Company as at 31 December 20X1, and of its financial performance and its cash flows for the year then ended in accordance with Hong Kong Financial Reporting Standards (“HKFRSs”) issued by the Hong Kong Institute of Certified Public Accountants (“HKICPA”) and have been properly prepared in compliance with the Companies Ordinance.

### **Basis for Opinion**

We conducted our audit in accordance with Hong Kong Standards on Auditing (“HKSA”) and with reference to Practice Note 820 (Revised), *The Audit of Licensed Corporations and Associated Entities of Intermediaries* issued by the HKICPA. Our responsibilities under those standards are further described in the Auditor’s Responsibilities for the Audit of the Financial Statements section of our report. We are independent of the Company in accordance with the HKICPA’s *Code of Ethics for Professional Accountants* (“the Code”), and we have fulfilled our other ethical responsibilities in accordance with the Code. We believe that the audit evidence we have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our opinion.

### **Other Information [or another title if appropriate such as “Information Other than the Financial Statements and Auditor’s Report Thereon”]**

*[Reporting in accordance with the reporting requirements in HKSA 720 (Revised), The Auditor’s Responsibilities Relating to Other Information – see Illustration 1 in Appendix 2 of HKSA 720 (Revised).]*

### **Responsibilities of Directors and Those Charged with Governance for the Financial Statements<sup>9</sup>**

The directors are responsible for the preparation of financial statements that give a true and fair view in accordance with HKFRSs issued by the HKICPA and the Companies Ordinance, and for such internal control as the directors determine is necessary to enable the preparation of financial statements that are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error.

In preparing the financial statements, the directors are responsible for assessing the Company’s ability to continue as a going concern, disclosing, as applicable, matters related to going concern and using the going concern basis of accounting unless the directors either intend to liquidate the Company or to cease operations, or have no realistic alternative but to do so.

In addition, the directors are required to ensure that the financial statements are in accordance with the records kept under the Securities and Futures (Keeping of Records) Rules and satisfy the requirements of the Securities and Futures (Accounts and Audit) Rules.

Those charged with governance are responsible for overseeing the Company’s financial reporting process.

<sup>8</sup> HKAS 1 allows entities to present comprehensive income using either a one statement approach (i.e. a single “statement of profit or loss and other comprehensive income”) or a two-statement approach (i.e. a “statement of profit or loss” together with a “statement of profit or loss and other comprehensive income”). Different terms may be used as long as they are consistent with the titles of the corresponding statements.

<sup>9</sup> Throughout the illustrative auditor’s reports, the terms directors and those charged with governance may need to be replaced by another term that is appropriate in the context of the legal framework in the particular jurisdiction.

## Auditor's Responsibilities for the Audit of the Financial Statements

Our objectives are to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements as a whole are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error, and to issue an auditor's report that includes our opinion.<sup>10</sup> Reasonable assurance is a high level of assurance, but is not a guarantee that an audit conducted in accordance with HKSA's will always detect a material misstatement when it exists. Misstatements can arise from fraud or error and are considered material if, individually or in the aggregate, they could reasonably be expected to influence the economic decisions of users taken on the basis of these financial statements. In addition, we are required to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are in accordance with the records kept under the Securities and Futures (Keeping of Records) Rules and satisfy the requirements of the Securities and Futures (Accounts and Audit) Rules.

Paragraph 41(b) of HKSA 700 (Revised) explains that the shaded material below can be located in an Appendix to the auditor's report. Paragraph 41(c) of HKSA 700 (Revised) explains that when law, regulation or HKSA's expressly permit, reference can be made to a website of an appropriate authority that contains the description of the auditor's responsibilities, rather than including this material in the auditor's report, provided that the description on the website addresses, and is not inconsistent with, the description of the auditor's responsibilities below.

As part of an audit in accordance with HKSA's, we exercise professional judgment and maintain professional skepticism throughout the audit. We also:

- Identify and assess the risks of material misstatement of the financial statements, whether due to fraud or error, design and perform audit procedures responsive to those risks, and obtain audit evidence that is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our opinion. The risk of not detecting a material misstatement resulting from fraud is higher than for one resulting from error, as fraud may involve collusion, forgery, intentional omissions, misrepresentations, or the override of internal control.
- Obtain an understanding of internal control relevant to the audit in order to design audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances, but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of the Company's internal control.
- Evaluate the appropriateness of accounting policies used and the reasonableness of accounting estimates and related disclosures made by the directors.
- Conclude on the appropriateness of the directors' use of the going concern basis of accounting and, based on the audit evidence obtained, whether a material uncertainty exists related to events or conditions that may cast significant doubt on the Company's ability to continue as a going concern. If we conclude that a material uncertainty exists, we are required to draw attention in our auditor's report to the related disclosures in the financial statements or, if such disclosures are inadequate, to modify our opinion. Our conclusions are based on the audit evidence obtained up to the date of our auditor's report. However, future events or conditions may cause the Company to cease to continue as a going concern.
- Evaluate the overall presentation, structure and content of the financial statements, including the disclosures, and whether the financial statements represent the underlying transactions and events in a manner that achieves fair presentation.

We communicate with those charged with governance regarding, among other matters, the planned scope and timing of the audit and significant audit findings, including any significant deficiencies in internal control that we identify during our audit.

<sup>10</sup> The auditors may consider it appropriate to clarify to whom they are responsible here or elsewhere in the report in accordance with their risk management policies and with reference to Professional Risk Management Bulletin No. 2 "Auditors' Duty of Care To Third Parties and The Audit Report".

**Report on matters under the Securities and Futures (Keeping of Records) Rules and Securities and Futures (Accounts and Audit) Rules of the Securities and Futures Ordinance<sup>11</sup>**

In our opinion, the financial statements are in accordance with the records kept under the Securities and Futures (Keeping of Records) Rules and satisfy the requirements of the Securities and Futures (Accounts and Audit) Rules.

XYZ & Co.

Certified Public Accountants (Practising) [or Certified Public Accountants]

[*Auditor Address*]

[*Date*]

---

<sup>11</sup> For further guidance on non-compliance with the Companies Ordinance, refer to HKSA 705 (Revised), *Modifications to the Opinion in the Independent Auditor's Report*, Appendix, Illustrations 3, 4 and 5.

## Example 2 - compliance report by the auditor - licensed corporation

### INDEPENDENT AUDITOR'S ASSURANCE REPORT ON COMPLIANCE WITH THE SECURITIES AND FUTURES ORDINANCE

To the Board of Directors of ABC Securities Limited ("the Company")

Pursuant to the Securities and Futures (Accounts and Audit) Rules and section 156 of the Securities and Futures Ordinance, we have been requested to issue this report for the year ended [year end date] for submission by the Company to the Securities and Futures Commission ("SFC").

#### *Directors' Responsibilities*

In relation to this report, the directors have a responsibility to ensure that:

- a. each of the returns as referred to in section 3(1)(b)\* of the Securities and Futures (Accounts and Audit) Rules made up to [year end date] is correctly compiled from the records of the Company;
- b.# the Company has systems of control in place that are adequate to ensure compliance with:
  - i. sections [4, 5, 6, 8(4), 10]<sup>1</sup> [10B, 10C, 10D]<sup>2</sup> and 11 of the Securities and Futures (Client Money) Rules; and
  - ii. sections [4(4), 5, 10(1)]<sup>1</sup> [9B, 10A(1)]<sup>2</sup> and 12 of the Securities and Futures (Client Securities) Rules;
- c. the Company has complied with:
  - i. section [3]<sup>1</sup> [3A]<sup>2</sup> of the Securities and Futures (Keeping of Records) Rules;
  - ii.# sections [4, 5, 6, 8(4), 10]<sup>1</sup> [10B, 10C, 10D]<sup>2</sup> and 11 of the Securities and Futures (Client Money) Rules; and
  - iii.# sections [4(4), 5, 10(1)]<sup>1</sup> [9B, 10A(1)]<sup>2</sup> and 12 of the Securities and Futures (Client Securities) Rules; and
- d. the Company has complied with the Securities and Futures (Financial Resources) Rules.

#### *Our Independence and Quality Management*

We have complied with the independence and other ethical requirements of the *Code of Ethics for Professional Accountants* issued by the Hong Kong Institute of Certified Public Accountants ("HKICPA"), which is founded on fundamental principles of integrity, objectivity, professional competence and due care, confidentiality and professional behavior.

The firm applies Hong Kong Standard on Quality Management 1<sup>3</sup>, which requires the firm to design, implement and operate a system of quality management including policies or procedures regarding compliance with ethical requirements, professional standards and applicable legal and regulatory requirements.

#### *Auditor's Responsibilities*

<sup>1</sup> [Applicable to licensed corporation other than in conducting Type 13 regulated activity.](#)

<sup>2</sup> [Applicable to licensed corporation in conducting Type 13 regulated activity.](#)

<sup>3</sup> HKSQM 1, *Quality Management for Firms that Perform Audits or Reviews of Financial Statements, or Other Assurance or Related Services Engagements*

Our responsibility is to express an independent conclusion on the Company's compliance with the relevant sections of the Securities and Futures (Accounts and Audit) Rules[, the Securities and Futures (Client Money) Rules, the Securities and Futures (Client Securities) Rules]<sup>#</sup> and the Securities and Futures (Keeping of Records) Rules as described in the directors' responsibilities section above, based on our engagement, and to report our conclusion to you.

We conducted our engagement in accordance with Hong Kong Standard on Assurance Engagements 3000 (Revised), *Assurance Engagements Other than Audits or Reviews of Historical Financial Information* and with reference to Practice Note 820 (Revised), *The Audit of Licensed Corporations and Associated Entities of Intermediaries* issued by the HKICPA. We have planned and performed our work to obtain reasonable assurance for giving conclusions 1(a) to (c) and obtain limited assurance for giving conclusion 2 below.

In relation to our conclusions 1(a) and 1(c) below, we have planned and performed such procedures as we considered necessary with reference to the procedures recommended in PN 820 (Revised), which included examining, on a test basis, evidence obtained from the Company regarding the Company's compliance with the above sections of the Securities and Futures (Accounts and Audit) Rules[, the Securities and Futures (Client Money) Rules, the Securities and Futures (Client Securities) Rules]<sup>#</sup> and the Securities and Futures (Keeping of Records) Rules.

[In relation to our conclusion 1(b) below, our work was based upon obtaining an understanding of the relevant control procedures in operation by enquiry of management and review of documents supplied to us. Our work included tests of control procedures and policies to establish whether relevant control objectives and internal control measures were designed by management for meeting the requirements specified in the document "Suggested Control Techniques and Procedures for Enhancing a Firm's Ability to Comply with the Securities and Futures (Client Securities) Rules and the Securities and Futures (Client Money) Rules" issued by the SFC.]<sup>#</sup>

In relation to our conclusion 2 below, we are not required to perform any procedures to search for instances of contravention of the Securities and Futures (Financial Resources) Rules. Our work was limited to reporting contraventions identified during the normal course of our work.

The procedures performed in a limited assurance engagement vary in nature and timing from, and are less in extent than for, a reasonable assurance engagement. Consequently, the level of assurance obtained in a limited assurance engagement is substantially lower than the assurance that would have been obtained had a reasonable assurance engagement been performed.

#### *Inherent Limitations*

Systems of controls designed to address specific control objectives are subject to inherent limitations of any internal control structure, and accordingly, errors or irregularities may occur and not be detected. Such measures cannot guarantee protection against fraudulent collusion especially on the part of those holding positions of authority or trust.

#### *Conclusion*<sup>2,4</sup>

Based on the foregoing:

1. 1. in our opinion:

- a. the Company has correctly compiled the attached returns as referred to in section 3(1)(b)\* of the Securities and Futures (Accounts and Audit) Rules made up to [year end date] from the records of the Company;

<sup>2</sup> ~~In the circumstances where the auditor expresses a qualified conclusion or a disclaimer of conclusion or adverse conclusion, the auditor's report is to be modified accordingly as required in paragraph 69(l)(v) of HKSAE 3000 (Revised). Further guidance is set out in paragraphs 74 to 77, A183, A189 to A192 of HKSAE 3000 (Revised).~~

<sup>4</sup> ~~In the circumstances where the auditor expresses a qualified conclusion or a disclaimer of conclusion or adverse conclusion, the auditor's report is to be modified accordingly as required in paragraph 69(l)(v) of HKSAE 3000 (Revised). Further guidance is set out in paragraphs 74 to 77, A183, A189 to A192 of HKSAE 3000 (Revised).~~

- b.# during the year ended [*year end date*], the Company had systems of control in place that were adequate to ensure compliance with:
- i. sections [4, 5, 6, 8(4), 10]<sup>1</sup> [10B, 10C, 10D]<sup>2</sup> and 11 of the Securities and Futures (Client Money) Rules; and
  - ii. sections [4(4), 5, 10(1)]<sup>1</sup> [9B, 10A(1)]<sup>2</sup> and 12 of the Securities and Futures (Client Securities) Rules;
- c. during the year ended [*year end date*], the Company has complied with:
- i. section [3]<sup>1</sup> [3A]<sup>2</sup> of the Securities and Futures (Keeping of Records) Rules;
  - ii.# sections [4, 5, 6, 8(4), 10]<sup>1</sup> [10B, 10C, 10D]<sup>2</sup> and 11 of the Securities and Futures (Client Money) Rules; and
  - iii.# sections [4(4), 5, 10(1)]<sup>1</sup> [9B, 10A(1)]<sup>2</sup> and 12 of the Securities and Futures (Client Securities) Rules; and
2. during the year ended [*year end date*], we are not aware of any instances where the Company has contravened the Securities and Futures (Financial Resources) Rules.

*Intended Users and Purpose*

This report is intended solely for submission by the Company to the SFC and is not intended to be, and should not be, used by anyone for any other purpose.

XYZ & Co.  
 Certified Public Accountants (Practising) [or Certified Public Accountants]  
 [Auditor's Address]  
 [Date]

#: *Not applicable where the licensed corporation does not hold client assets. The auditor should refer to paragraphs 6588 to 6790 of Appendix 1 for more guidance and consider carrying out the procedures set out in those paragraphs.*

Where the licensed corporation does not hold assets, the auditor is encouraged to include either one of the following paragraphs after the first paragraph of the example compliance report:

- (a) The licensed corporation is subject to the licensing condition that it shall not hold client assets. [*This paragraph is applicable to licensed corporations / associated entities who are not licensed to hold client assets.*]
- (b) The licensed corporation is permitted to hold client assets however no client assets were held during the year. [*This paragraph is applicable to licensed corporations / associated entities who are licensed to but does not hold client assets.*]

\*: *For cessation audits (see paragraph 426127), reference to the financial year end date in this example report should be changed to the cessation date of the licensed corporation's regulated activities. In addition, the reference to "section 3(1)(b)" of the Securities and Futures (Accounts and Audit) Rules in this example report should be changed to "section 3(2)(b)" instead.*

### Example 3 - compliance report by the auditor - associated entity of intermediary

#### INDEPENDENT AUDITOR’S ASSURANCE REPORT ON COMPLIANCE WITH THE SECURITIES AND FUTURES ORDINANCE

To the Board of Directors of ABC Nominee Limited (“the Company”)

Pursuant to the Securities and Futures (Accounts and Audit) Rules and section 156 of the Securities and Futures Ordinance, we have been requested to issue this report for the year ended [year end date] \* for submission by the Company to the Securities and Futures Commission (“SFC”).

##### *Directors’ Responsibilities*

In relation to this report, the directors have a responsibility to ensure that:

- a. the Company has systems of control in place that are adequate to ensure compliance with:
  - i.# sections [4, 5, 6, 8(4), 10]<sup>1</sup> [10B, 10C, 10D]<sup>2</sup>, 11 of the Securities and Futures (Client Money) Rules; and
  - ii. sections [4(4), 5, 10(1)]<sup>1</sup> [9B, 10A(1)]<sup>2</sup> and 12 of the Securities and Futures (Client Securities) Rules; and
- b. the Company has complied with:
  - i. section [4]<sup>1</sup> [4A]<sup>2</sup> of the Securities and Futures (Keeping of Records) Rules;
  - ii.# sections [4, 5, 6, 8(4), 10]<sup>1</sup> [10B, 10C, 10D]<sup>2</sup> and 11 of the Securities and Futures (Client Money) Rules; and
  - iii. sections [4(4), 5, 10(1)]<sup>1</sup> [9B, 10A(1)]<sup>2</sup> and 12 of the Securities and Futures (Client Securities) Rules.

##### *Our Independence and Quality Management*

We have complied with the independence and other ethical requirements of the *Code of Ethics for Professional Accountants* issued by the Hong Kong Institute of Certified Public Accountants (“HKICPA”), which is founded on fundamental principles of integrity, objectivity, professional competence and due care, confidentiality and professional behavior.

The firm applies Hong Kong Standard on Quality Management 1<sup>3</sup>, which requires the firm to design, implement and operate a system of quality management including policies or procedures regarding compliance with ethical requirements, professional standards and applicable legal and regulatory requirements.

##### *Auditor’s Responsibilities*

Our responsibility is to express an independent opinion on the Company’s compliance with the relevant sections of [the Securities and Futures (Client Money) Rules,]<sup>#</sup> the Securities and Futures (Client Securities) Rules and the Securities and Futures (Keeping of Records) Rules as described in the directors’ responsibilities section above, based on our engagement, and to report our opinion to you.

<sup>1</sup> Applicable to associated entity of intermediary licensed or registered for other than Type 13 regulated activity.

<sup>2</sup> Applicable to associated entity of intermediary licensed or registered for Type 13 regulated activity.

<sup>3</sup> HKSQM 1, *Quality Management for Firms that Perform Audits or Reviews of Financial Statements, or Other Assurance or Related Services Engagements*



We conducted our engagement in accordance with Hong Kong Standard on Assurance Engagements 3000 (Revised), *Assurance Engagements Other than Audits or Reviews of Historical Financial Information* and with reference to Practice Note 820 (Revised), *The Audit of Licensed Corporations and Associated Entities of Intermediaries* issued by the HKICPA. We have planned and performed our work to obtain reasonable assurance for giving our opinion below.

In relation to our opinion (a) below, our work was based upon obtaining an understanding of the relevant control procedures in operation by enquiry of management and review of documents supplied to us. Our work included tests of control procedures and policies to establish whether relevant control objectives and internal control measures were designed by management for meeting the requirements specified in the document “Suggested Control Techniques and Procedures for Enhancing a Firm’s Ability to Comply with the Securities and Futures (Client Securities) Rules and the Securities and Futures (Client Money) Rules” issued by the SFC.

In relation to our opinion (b) below, we have planned and performed such procedures as we considered necessary with reference to the procedures recommended in PN 820 (Revised), which included examining, on a test basis, evidence obtained from the Company regarding the Company’s compliance with the above sections of [the Securities and Futures (Client Money) Rules,]<sup>#</sup> the Securities and Futures (Client Securities) Rules and the Securities and Futures (Keeping of Records) Rules.

We believe that the evidence we have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our opinion.

#### *Inherent Limitations*

Systems of controls designed to address specific control objectives are subject to inherent limitations of any internal control structure, and accordingly, errors or irregularities may occur and not be detected. Such measures cannot guarantee protection against fraudulent collusion especially on the part of those holding positions of authority or trust.

#### *Opinion*<sup>24</sup>

Based on the foregoing, in our opinion:

- a. during the year ended [*year end date*], the Company had systems of control in place that were adequate to ensure compliance with:
  - i.<sup>#</sup> sections [4, 5, 6, 8(4), 10]<sup>1</sup> [10B, 10C, 10D]<sup>2</sup>, 11 of the Securities and Futures (Client Money) Rules; and
  - ii. sections [4(4), 5, 10(1)]<sup>1</sup> [9B, 10A(1)]<sup>2</sup> and 12 of the Securities and Futures (Client Securities) Rules; and
- b. during the year ended [*year end date*], the Company has complied with:
  - i. section [4]<sup>1</sup> [4A]<sup>2</sup> of the Securities and Futures (Keeping of Records) Rules;
  - ii.<sup>#</sup> sections [4, 5, 6, 8(4), 10]<sup>1</sup> [10B, 10C, 10D]<sup>2</sup> and 11 of the Securities and Futures (Client Money) Rules; and
  - iii. sections [4(4), 5, 10(1)]<sup>1</sup> [9B, 10A(1)]<sup>2</sup> and 12 of the Securities and Futures (Client Securities) Rules.

#### *Intended Users and Purpose*

<sup>2</sup>—~~In the circumstances where the auditor expresses a qualified conclusion or a disclaimer of conclusion or adverse conclusion, the auditor’s report is to be modified accordingly as required in paragraph 69(l)(v) of HKSAE 3000 (Revised). Further guidance is set out in paragraphs 74 to 77, A183, A189 to A192 of HKSAE 3000 (Revised).~~

<sup>4</sup> In the circumstances where the auditor expresses a qualified conclusion or a disclaimer of conclusion or adverse conclusion, the auditor’s report is to be modified accordingly as required in paragraph 69(l)(v) of HKSAE 3000 (Revised). Further guidance is set out in paragraphs 74 to 77, A183, A189 to A192 of HKSAE 3000 (Revised).

This report is intended solely for submission by the Company to the SFC and is not intended to be, and should not be, used by anyone for any other purpose.

XYZ & Co.  
Certified Public Accountants (Practising) [or Certified Public Accountants]  
[Auditor's Address]  
[Date]

---

#: *Not applicable in the case of an associated entity of a registered institution.*

| \*: *For cessation audits (see paragraph [426127](#)), reference to the financial year end date in this example report should be changed to the date that the entity ceases to be an associated entity.*

## Example 4 – example modified auditor’s assurance reports

*The following examples of modified reports are for guidance only and are not intended to be exhaustive or applicable to all situations. They are based on Examples 2 and 3 in Appendix 2.*

### (a) Qualified conclusion for Example 2 – compliance report by the auditor – licensed corporation

...

#### *Basis for Qualified Conclusion*

In respect of conclusion 1(b) below, we identified exception[s] to the Company’s systems of control in place over compliance with [insert relevant sections of the Securities and Futures (Client Money) Rules/the Securities and Futures (Client Securities) Rules] as set out in the appendix to this report.

In respect of conclusion 1(c) below, we identified the non-compliance with [insert relevant sections of the relevant rules] as set out in the appendix to this report.

#### *Qualified Conclusion*

Based on the foregoing,

1. in our opinion:

...

b. except for the effect of the matter described in the Basis for Qualified Conclusion section of our report, during the year ended [year end date], the Company had systems of control in place that were adequate to ensure compliance with:

i. sections [4, 5, 6, 8(4), 10]<sup>1</sup>[10B, 10C, 10D]<sup>2</sup>, 11 of the Securities and Futures (Client Money) Rules; and

ii. sections [4(4), 5, 10(1)]<sup>1</sup> [9B, 10A(1)]<sup>2</sup> and 12 of the Securities and Futures (Client Securities) Rules;

c. except for the effect of the matter described in the Basis for Qualified Conclusion section of our report, during the year ended [year end date], the Company has complied with:

i. section [3]<sup>1</sup> [3A]<sup>2</sup> of the Securities and Futures (Keeping of Records) Rules;

ii. sections [4, 5, 6, 8(4), 10]<sup>1</sup> [10B, 10C, 10D]<sup>2</sup> and 11 of the Securities and Futures (Client Money) Rules; and

iii. sections [4(4), 5, 10(1)]<sup>1</sup> [9B, 10A(1)]<sup>2</sup> and 12 of the Securities and Futures (Client Securities) Rules.

<sup>1</sup> Applicable to licensed corporation or associated entity of intermediary other than in conducting Type 13 regulated activity.

<sup>2</sup> Applicable to licensed corporation or associated entity of intermediary in conducting Type 13 regulated activity.

**(b) Qualified opinion for Example 3 – compliance report by the auditor – associated entity of intermediary**

...

*Auditor's Responsibilities*

...

We believe that the evidence we have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our qualified opinion.

*Basis for Qualified Opinion*

In respect of opinion (b) below, we identified the non-compliance with [insert relevant sections of the relevant rules] as set out in the appendix to this report.

*Qualified Opinion*

Based on the foregoing, in our opinion:

...

- b. except for the effect of the matter described in the Basis for Qualified Opinion section of our report, during the year ended [*year end date*], the Company has complied with:
  - i. section [4]<sup>1</sup> [4A]<sup>2</sup> of the Securities and Futures (Keeping of Records) Rules;
  - ii. sections [4, 5, 6, 8(4), 10]<sup>1</sup> [10B, 10C, 10D]<sup>2</sup> and 11 of the Securities and Futures (Client Money) Rules; and
  - iii. sections [4(4), 5, 10(1)]<sup>1</sup> [9B, 10A(1)]<sup>2</sup> and 12 of the Securities and Futures (Client Securities) Rules.

...

### APPENDIX 3 - EXAMPLE OF MANAGEMENT REPRESENTATION LETTER

The following illustrative letter includes additional written representations that the auditor of a regulated entity would also consider. It should be read in conjunction with the examples of representations given in HKSA 580 “Written Representations” and will need to be modified according to the requirements and circumstances of the individual regulated entity.

In situations where the compliance report is being issued after the issuance of the auditor’s report on the financial statements, it may be necessary to request an updated written representation letter for management to reaffirm that the written representations it previously made with respect to the audit of the financial statements remain appropriate.<sup>1</sup>

[Regulated entity’s letterhead]

[Audit Firm]  
[Address]

[Date of Auditor’s report]

(To Auditor)

...

#### *Information Provided*

...

- We have disclosed to you all known instances of non-compliance or suspected non-compliance with laws and regulations whose effects should be considered when preparing the financial statements and relevant returns for your audit for the year ended [year end date] and up to the date of this letter.
- All the returns provided to you for the purpose of this engagement are the ones submitted to the Securities and Futures Commission (“SFC”).
- All transactions undertaken by the Company have been properly reflected and recorded in the accounting and non-accounting records, such records properly reflect the true nature of all transactions.

#### *Regulatory*

- All complaints received from customers have been notified to the relevant personnel within the Company and have been drawn to your attention.
- We have acknowledged and fulfilled our responsibilities for establishing and maintaining adequate accounting and non-accounting records and systems of control in accordance with the rules and regulations of SFC and other relevant laws, codes and guidelines at all times.
- We acknowledge our responsibility for preparing the [Account Disclosure Document (the “ADD”) for Licensed Corporation/ Analysis of Client Assets for Associated Entity]<sup>2</sup> for the purposes of compliance with the requirements of section 156(1)(a) of the Securities and

---

<sup>1</sup> The following paragraph may be considered to add in the representation letter:

• There is no change to the terms being represented in the letter of representation dated [date of the auditor’s report on the financial statements], which has been provided to you, up to the date of this letter. [if there are changes, please specify]

<sup>2</sup> Delete as appropriate.

Futures Ordinance (the “SFO”) as amplified in section [3(1)/ 3(3)]<sup>2</sup> of the Securities and Futures (Accounts and Audit) Rules.

- [During the year ended [year end date], the Company has systems of control in place that are adequate to ensure compliance with sections 4, 5, 6, 8(4), 10 and 11 of the Securities and Futures (Client Money) Rules and sections 4(4), 5, 10(1) and 12 of the Securities and Futures (Client Securities) Rules.]<sup>3,4</sup> [If exception noted, please specify]
- [During the year ended [year end date], the Company has systems of control in place that are adequate to ensure compliance with sections 10B, 10C, 10D and 11 of the Securities and Futures (Client Money) Rules and sections 9B, 10A(1) and 12 of the Securities and Futures (Client Securities) Rules.]<sup>3,5</sup> [If exception noted, please specify]
- [During the year ended [year end date], the Company has complied with section [3]<sup>6</sup> [4]<sup>7</sup> of the Securities and Futures (Keeping of Records) Rules, [sections 4, 5, 6, 8(4), 10 and 11 of the Securities and Futures (Client Money) Rules, sections 4(4), 5, 10(1) and 12 of the Securities and Futures (Client Securities) Rules]<sup>3,4</sup> and [the Securities and Futures (Financial Resources) Rules]<sup>4,6</sup>. [If exception noted, please specify]
- During the year ended [year end date], the Company has complied with section [3A]<sup>8</sup> [4A]<sup>9</sup> of the Securities and Futures (Keeping of Records) Rules, [sections 10B, 10C, 10D and 11 of the Securities and Futures (Client Money) Rules, sections 9B, 10A(1) and 12 of the Securities and Futures (Client Securities) Rules]<sup>3,5</sup> and [the Securities and Futures (Financial Resources) Rules]<sup>8</sup>. [If exception noted, please specify]
- [During the year ended [year end date], the Company has complied with the relevant capital requirements under the Securities and Futures (Financial Resources) Rules]<sup>4,6, 8</sup>. [If exception noted, please specify]
- [Each of the financial returns as referred to in section 3(1)(b) of the Securities and Futures (Accounts and Audit) Rules as at [year end date] is correctly compiled from the accounting and non-accounting records of the Company and prepared in accordance with the Securities and Futures (Financial Resources) Rules]<sup>4,6, 8</sup>.
- We are not aware of any matters which adversely affect the financial position of the Company to a material extent and to which your attention should be drawn for the year ended [year end date] and up to the date of this letter.
- [We have read the draft auditor’s compliance report and have agreed with the facts and statements set out in the draft report in respect of your engagement.] [If there is disagreement, please specify]
- [We confirm that no client assets as defined in section 1 in Schedule 1 of the SFO have been administered, held, handled or processed by us, our staff or any company representative or appointed representative during the year.]<sup>10</sup>

<sup>3</sup> Not applicable where the regulated entity does not hold client assets.

<sup>4</sup> Applicable to regulated entity other than in conducting Type 13 regulated activity.

<sup>5</sup> Applicable to regulated entity in conducting Type 13 regulated activity.

<sup>6</sup> Applicable to licensed corporation other than in conducting Type 13 regulated activity.

<sup>7</sup> Applicable to associated entity of intermediary other than in conducting Type 13 regulated activity.

<sup>8</sup> Applicable to licensed corporation in conducting Type 13 regulated activity.

<sup>9</sup> Applicable to associated entity of intermediary in conducting Type 13 regulated activity.

<sup>10</sup> Not applicable where the regulated entity holds client assets as defined in section 1 in Schedule 1 of the SFO.

- *[We have provided full details to you of all correspondence and notes of meetings with the SFC and other regulatory authorities for the year ended [year end date] and up to the date of this letter.]<sup>7,11</sup>*

Or

*["We have provided full details to you of all correspondence and notes of meetings with the SFC and other regulatory authorities (except for correspondence and notes of meetings with the SFC subject to section 378 of the SFO other than supervisory information, records or documents as stated in frequently-asked questions issued by SFC for the application of section 378 of the SFO to disclosure of supervisory information by licensed corporation on 18 December 2018 where no consent has been given by the SFC for us to disclose such correspondence and notes of meetings with the SFC to you, if applicable) for the year ended [year end date] and up to the date of this letter.]<sup>8,12</sup>*

There are no regulatory matters including those which are subject to section 378 of the SFO, if any, which may adversely affect the financial position and regulatory compliance of the Company and to which your attention should be drawn for the year ended [year end date] and up to the date of this letter.

<sup>7</sup> ~~Applicable to the following circumstances:~~

- ~~(i) the auditor is not aware of any correspondence between the regulated entity and the SFC that are subject to section 378 of the SFO; or~~
- ~~(ii) the auditor is aware of correspondence between the regulated entity and the SFC that are subject to section 378 of the SFO but those are related to the Supervisory Information only for which SFC's consent is not required; or~~
- ~~(iii) the auditor is aware of correspondence other than the Supervisory Information between the regulated entity and the SFC that are subject to section 378 of the SFO and have obtained all related information for assessment after obtaining SFC's consent.~~

<sup>11</sup> ~~Applicable to the following circumstances:~~

- ~~(i) the auditor is not aware of any correspondence between the regulated entity and the SFC that is subject to section 378 of the SFO; or~~
- ~~(ii) the auditor is aware of correspondence between the regulated entity and the SFC that is subject to section 378 of the SFO but is related to the Supervisory Information only for which SFC's consent is not required; or~~
- ~~(iii) the auditor is aware of correspondence other than the Supervisory Information between the regulated entity and the SFC that is subject to section 378 of the SFO and has obtained all related information for assessment after obtaining SFC's consent.~~

<sup>8</sup> ~~Applicable if the auditor is aware of correspondence other than the Supervisory Information between the regulated entity and the SFC that are subject to section 378 of the SFO but the regulated entity has not obtained consent from the SFC to disclose such correspondence to the auditor:~~

<sup>12</sup> ~~Applicable if the auditor is aware of correspondence other than the Supervisory Information between the regulated entity and the SFC that are subject to section 378 of the SFO but the regulated entity has not obtained consent from the SFC to disclose such correspondence to the auditor:~~